

# **What equality law means for your business**

# Contents

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>5</b>
The legal status of this guidance .....	6
<b>1. What equality law means for your business when you're providing goods, facilities or services to the public .....</b>	<b>7</b>
Who is this guide for? .....	7
What's in this guide.....	7
What else is in this guide .....	8
Making sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public .....	9
Protected characteristics.....	9
What is unlawful discrimination? .....	9
<b>Services for persons of particular age groups .....</b>	<b>15</b>
Particular types of business .....	19
Businesses selling products, such as shops and petrol stations.....	19
Banks and other financial services providers .....	22
Builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services .....	30
Estate agents, letting agents and property management companies.....	31
Gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers .....	35
Hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons .....	40
Providing services for people with a particular protected characteristic or separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women.....	41
Hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs.....	44
Theatres and other entertainment venues .....	48

Design and manufacture of goods .....	51
<b>2. Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres .....</b>	<b>53</b>
Staff behaviour.....	54
The building or other place where you deliver your services .....	54
Advertisements and marketing .....	55
Written information.....	57
Websites and internet services .....	58
Reasonable adjustments .....	59
Exceptions .....	60
Telephone access and call centres.....	61
<b>3. When you are responsible for what other people do.....</b>	<b>62</b>
When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation .....	62
How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible .....	64
How you can make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.....	65
Using written terms of employment for employees .....	65
When your workers or agents may be personally liable.....	66
What happens if the discrimination is done by a person who is not a worker of yours or your agent.....	67
What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law .....	67
What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law .....	69
What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation .....	69
<b>4. The duty to make reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people.....</b>	<b>70</b>
The three requirements of the duty.....	72
Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage? .....	76

Working out what needs to change.....	77
What is meant by ‘reasonable’ .....	78
The continuing duty on organisations .....	79
Who pays for reasonable adjustments? .....	80
When the duty is different .....	81
Associations.....	81
Rented premises or premises available to rent .....	82
Transport services .....	84
<b>5. What to do if someone says they’ve been discriminated against .....</b>	<b>85</b>
If someone complains directly to you .....	86
Alternative dispute resolution.....	87
The questions procedure .....	88
Where claims are brought.....	89
Time limits for bringing a claim.....	90
The standard and burden of proof.....	91
What the court can order you to do.....	91
More information about defending a court case.....	92
<b>6. Further sources of information and advice .....</b>	<b>93</b>
General advice and information .....	93
Business advice and information .....	94
Charities and voluntary organisations .....	95
Advice on specific issues .....	97
<b>7. Glossary .....</b>	<b>104</b>

# Introduction

This guide is one of a series written by the Equality and Human Rights Commission to explain what you must do to meet the requirements of equality law. These guides support the implementation of the Equality Act 2010. This Act brought together lots of different equality laws, many of which we have had for a long time. By doing this, the Act makes equality law simpler and easier to understand.

There are three guides giving advice on your responsibilities under equality law when providing goods, facilities and services, carrying out public functions or running an association. These are aimed at:

1. Associations, clubs and societies
2. Businesses
3. Voluntary and community sector organisations, including charities

We have produced a separate series of guides which explain what equality law means for you if you are providing education services, whether in a school or in further or higher education.

Other guides and alternative formats

We have also produced:

- A separate series of guides which explain what equality law means for you if you are an employer.
- Different guides for individual people who are using services, or working and who want to know their rights to equality.

If you require this guide in an alternative format and/or language please contact us to discuss your needs. Contact details are available at the end of the publication.

## The legal status of this guidance

This guidance applies to England, Scotland and Wales. It has been aligned with the Code of Practice on Services, Public Functions and Associations. Following this guidance should have the same effect as following the Code. In other words, if a person or an organisation who has duties under the Equality Act 2010's provisions on services, public functions and associations does what this guidance says they must do, it may help them to avoid an adverse decision by a court in proceedings brought under the Equality Act 2010.

This guide is based on equality law as it is at April 2014. Any future changes in the law will be reflected in further editions.

# **1. What equality law means for your business when you're providing goods, facilities or services to the public**

## **Who is this guide for?**

This guide is for you if your business provides any goods, facilities or services to members of the public. When you do this, equality law applies to you.

It does not matter whether you give the service for free (for example, giving someone information about your paid-for services) or if you charge for it. It does not matter if you are set up as a sole trader, a partnership, a limited company or any other legal structure. The size of your business does not matter either. Equality law applies to you.

Equality law affects everyone responsible for running your business or who might do something on its behalf, including staff if you have them.

## **What's in this guide**

This guide tells you how you can avoid all the different types of unlawful discrimination. We give you an overview of how equality law applies to all businesses, and then we go on to look at particular issues that businesses providing goods, facilities or services in different sectors may need to think about when considering what equality law requires them to do.

We give examples of issues that may affect:

- businesses selling goods, such as shops and petrol stations
- banks and other financial services providers
- builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services
- estate agents, letting agents and property management companies
- gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers

- hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons
- hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs
- theatres and other entertainment venues
- designers and manufacturers of goods – who are only covered in specific circumstances.

If your business is not in this list, it does not mean that equality law does not apply to you. Reading this guide will help you and your business. Use it to work out how to apply what it says to your business.

## ***What else is in this guide***

This guide also contains the following sections, which are similar in each guide in the series and contain information you are likely to need to understand what we tell you about running a business in a way that meets the requirements of equality law:

- Advice on how to avoid discrimination in the way you – and your staff – behave and how you provide your services, whether that is face to face, at a particular place, using written materials, by the internet or over the telephone.
- Information about when you are responsible for what other people do, for example, staff who are working for you.
- Information about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people who are (or may want to become) your service users or clients.
- Advice on what to do if someone says they've been discriminated against.
- A Glossary containing a list of words and key ideas you need to understand this guide – all words highlighted in **bold** are in this list. They are highlighted the first time they are used in each section and sometimes on subsequent occasions.
- Information on where to find more advice and support.

Throughout the text, we give you some ideas on what you can do if you want to follow equality good practice. While good practice may mean doing more than equality law says you must do, many organisations find it useful in helping them to deliver better services. Sometimes equality law itself doesn't tell you exactly how to do what it says you must do, and you can use our good practice tips to help you.



# Making sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public

First, use this list to make sure you know what equality law says you must do.

## *Protected characteristics*

Make sure you know what is meant by:

- age
- disability
- gender reassignment
- pregnancy and maternity (which includes breastfeeding)
- race
- religion or belief
- sex
- sexual orientation.

These are known as **protected characteristics**.

## *What is unlawful discrimination?*

Unlawful discrimination can take a number of different forms:

- You must not treat a person worse because of one or more of their protected characteristics (this is called **direct discrimination**). However, when the treatment is because of the age of the person, it may be permissible if you can show that what you have done is **objectively justified**.

For example:

- A shop will not serve someone because of their ethnic origin.
- A nightclub charges a higher price for entry to a man because of their sex where the service provided to a woman is otherwise exactly the same.

- You must not do something to someone which has (or would have) a worse impact on them and on other people who share a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not share that characteristic. Unless you can show that what you have done is **objectively justified**, this will be what is called **indirect discrimination**. 'Doing something' can include making a decision, or applying a rule or way of doing things.

For example:

A shop decides to apply a 'no hats or other headgear' rule to customers. If this rule is applied in exactly the same way to every customer, Sikhs, Jews, Muslims and Rastafarians who may cover their heads as part of their religion will not be able to use the shop. Unless the shop can **objectively justify** using the rule, this will be indirect discrimination.

- You must not treat a disabled person **unfavourably** because of something connected to their disability where you cannot show that what you are doing is **objectively justified**. This only applies if you know or could **reasonably** have been expected to know that the person is a disabled person. This is called discrimination arising from disability.

For example:

A shop has a 'no dogs' rule. If the shop bars a disabled person who uses an assistance dog, not because of their disability but because they have a dog with them, this would be discrimination arising from disability unless the shop can objectively justify what it has done.

The required knowledge is of the facts of the person's disability but a service provider does not also need to realise that those particular facts are likely to meet the legal definition of disability.

- You must not treat a person worse than someone else because they are **associated with** a person who has a protected characteristic.

For example:

A restaurant refuses to serve a customer who has a disabled child with them, but serves other parents who have their children with them.

- You must not treat a person worse because you incorrectly think they have a protected characteristic (**perception**).

For example:

A member of staff in a pub tells a woman that they will not serve her because they think she is a **transsexual person**. It is likely the woman has been unlawfully discriminated against because of gender reassignment, even though she is not a transsexual person.

- You must not treat a person badly or **victimise** them because they have complained about discrimination or helped someone else complain or done anything to uphold their own or someone else's equality law rights.

For example:

A customer complains that a member of staff in a café told her she was not allowed to breastfeed her baby except in the toilets. Because she has complained, the café tells her she is barred altogether. This is almost certainly victimisation.

- You must not **harass** a person.

For example:

A member of staff in a nightclub is verbally abusive to a customer in relation to a protected characteristic.

**Note:** Even where the behaviour does not come within the equality law definition of harassment, for example, because it is related to religion or belief or sexual orientation, it is likely still to be unlawful **direct discrimination** because you are giving the service to the person on worse terms than you would give someone who did not have the same protected characteristic.

In addition, to make sure that disabled people are able to use your services as far as is reasonable to the same standard as non-disabled people, you must make **reasonable adjustments**. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of **impairments** might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

For example:

A bank branch has a flight of steps up to its entrance but it is not permitted by the local authority to build a ramp because this would block the pavement. The bank installs a platform lift so that disabled people with mobility impairments can get into the branch. This is a reasonable adjustment.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

Where you used to provide services to a person, it will still be unlawful to discriminate against them in the ways described above if what you do arises out of and is closely connected to the relationship that used to exist between you and that person.

## **What does this mean for your business?**

Because of a protected characteristic, you and anyone working for you:

- Must not refuse to serve someone or refuse to take them on as a client.

For example:

- You must not refuse to serve a woman who is breastfeeding a baby.
- You must not say you will not take people with a particular religion or belief as a client.
- Must not stop serving or working for someone if you still serve or work for other customers or clients who do not have the same protected characteristic in the same circumstances.

For example:

- You must not stop offering home visits to disabled people that you find out have a mental health condition if you go on offering them to other clients.  
That is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.
- Must not give someone a service of a worse quality or in a worse way than you would usually provide the service.

For example:

You must not keep someone waiting for service twice as long as usual because of a protected characteristic.

- Must not give someone a service with worse terms than you would usually offer.

For example:

You must not charge someone with a particular protected characteristic a higher deposit when they hire something from you.

- Must not put them at any other disadvantage.

You can still tell your customers or clients what standards of behaviour you want from them - for example, behaving with respect towards your staff and to other customers.

Sometimes, how someone behaves may be linked to a protected characteristic.

If you set standards of behaviour for your customers or clients which have a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not have that characteristic, you need to make sure that you can **objectively justify** what you have done. Otherwise, it will be indirect discrimination.

If you do set standards of behaviour, you must make **reasonable adjustments** to the standards for disabled people and avoid **discrimination arising from disability**. You can read more about reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

For example:

A couple and their teenage child who has a learning disability sit down in a café. Because of her disability, the child speaks and laughs loudly. One of the staff tells the family they will have to leave if their child is not quiet, even though the parents explain why the child is making a noise. If the child's behaviour is not causing any significant difficulties for other customers or for staff, it would probably be hard for the café to **objectively justify** telling the family to leave (in other words, withdraw the service from them), so doing this is likely to be discrimination arising from disability and/or indirect discrimination because of the child's disability. The right approach would be for the staff first to make a reasonable adjustment to the standard they expected and only then to decide if the child's behaviour was still unacceptable (which is unlikely).

**Check out:** What does equality law mean for you when you're providing services to the public: staff, places, written information, websites, telephone access?

You can read more in Chapter 2 about:

- staff behaviour
- advertisements and marketing
- how people access services: face to face, at a particular place, using written materials, by the internet or over the phone.

**Check out:** When you are responsible for what other people do.

You can read more about when you are responsible for what other people do, such as staff working for you, in Chapter 3.

**Exceptions:** There are some exceptions to the general rules of equality law, when the law may apply differently in some circumstances. You can read more next about when these exceptions may apply. Check if any of them apply to your business or situation.

## **Do any of the exceptions in equality law apply to my business or situation?**

There are some exceptions to the general rules of equality law, when people's protected characteristics may be relevant to the goods, facilities or services you provide. For businesses, these are:

- Services for particular groups:
  - Services provided for people with a particular protected characteristic.
  - Services for persons of particular age groups.
  - Separate services for men and women or single-sex services.
- Where health and safety considerations apply to pregnant women.

As well as these exceptions, equality law allows you to treat disabled people more favourably than non-disabled people. The aim of the law in allowing this is to remove barriers that disabled people would otherwise face to accessing services.

For example:

- A hairdresser visits a disabled client at home when they do not usually provide home visits, as the client has a mobility impairment that makes the sinks at the salon unsuitable for washing their hair.
- A music venue gives two tickets for the price of one to disabled people who need to bring someone with them to assist them.

## Services for particular groups

There are limited and specific situations in which you can provide (or refuse to provide) all or some of your services to people based on a protected characteristic. These exceptions apply to any organisation which meets the strict tests.

### ***Services provided to people with a particular protected characteristic***

If you normally supply services only for people with a particular protected characteristic (such as women or people of African Caribbean descent), you can carry on providing the service the same way.

For example:

A butcher only sells meat from animals which have been slaughtered in a way that conforms to particular religious requirements (Halal or Kosher meat). The butcher does not have to sell non-Halal or non-Kosher meat, even though this means that Muslim and Jewish people are more likely to be customers than others. However, the butcher cannot refuse to sell the Halal or Kosher meat to customers who are not Muslim or Jewish.

You can refuse to provide the service to someone who does not have that characteristic if you reasonably think it is impracticable for you to provide them with the service.

You can also target your advertising or marketing at a group with particular protected characteristics, as long as you do not suggest you will not serve people with a particular characteristic (unless one of the exceptions applies). You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

## Services for persons of particular age groups

There are certain exceptions if you provide services to persons of particular age groups.

- You may provide concessions in respect of a service to persons of a particular age group, such as discounts for pensioners or schemes such as the young persons' railcard.
- You may provide holiday services to persons of a particular age group where an essential feature of the holiday is to bring together persons of that age and you clearly indicate this at the time you offer the holiday, such as SAGA or 18-30 holidays.
- Where the law restricts the supply of certain services by age (for example, the sale of alcohol, tobacco or fireworks), you may withhold such services from persons who appear to be younger than a particular age and cannot provide satisfactory proof of

their age, provided you have displayed signs notifying the public that you will ask for proof of age in this way.

- Finally, there are certain exceptions allowing owners of sites housing residential mobile homes that are occupied as permanent residences to restrict occupation of their land to persons over a particular age.

There is a further exception allowing businesses to take age into account when providing financial services, such as banking, credit, insurance, and personal pension services. However, where you undertake an assessment of risk for the purposes of providing a financial service, you may only take account of a person's age in so far as this is relevant to risk and where the information is obtained from a source that it is reasonable to rely on.

### ***Separate services for men and women and single-sex services***

You are allowed to provide separate services for men and women where providing a joint service (ie one where men and women are provided with exactly the same service) would not be as effective. You are also allowed to provide separate services for men and women in different ways or to a different level where:

- providing a joint service would not be as effective, and
- the extent to which the service is required by one sex makes it not reasonably practicable to provide the service except in the different ways or to the different level.

In each case, you need to be able to **objectively justify** what you are doing.

You are allowed to provide single-sex services (services just for men or just for women) where this is **objectively justified** and:

- only men or only women require the service, or
- there is joint provision for both sexes but that is not enough on its own, or
- if the service were provided for men and women jointly, it would not be as effective and the extent to which each sex requires the service makes it not reasonably practicable to provide separate services for each sex because of the extent to which the service is required by persons of each sex, or
- the services are provided in a hospital or other place where users need special care, supervision or attention (or in parts of such an establishment), or
- the services may be used by more than one person at the same time and a woman might reasonably object to the presence of a man (or vice versa), or
- the services may involve physical contact between a user and someone else and that other person may reasonably object if the user is of the opposite sex.



For example:

- At a commercial gym and swimming pool, women-only swimming sessions could be provided as well as mixed sessions.
- Separate services for men and women could be provided by a beauty therapist where intimate personal health or hygiene is involved.
- A healthcare provider can offer services only to men or only to women, such as particular types of health screening for conditions that only affect men or only affect women.

Generally, a business which is providing separate services or single-sex services should treat a **transsexual person** according to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the ~~physical~~ sex recorded at birth~~they were born with~~), as it is unlawful to discriminate against someone because of gender reassignment. Although a business can exclude a transsexual person or provide them with a different service, this is only if it can **objectively justify** doing so.

A business may have a policy about providing its service to transsexual users, but this policy must still be applied on a case-by-case basis. It is necessary to balance the needs of the transsexual person for the service, and the disadvantage to them if they are refused access to it, against the needs of other users, and any disadvantage to them, if the transsexual person is allowed access. To do this may require discussion with service users (maintaining confidentiality for the transsexual service user). Care should be taken in each case to avoid a decision based on ignorance or prejudice.

Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so.

Transsexual people should not be routinely asked to produce their Gender Recognition Certificate (if they have one) as evidence of their legal sex. If a business requires proof of a person's legal sex, then their birth certificate should be sufficient confirmation.

~~Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes and therefore should not be excluded from single sex services.~~

## Health and safety for pregnant women

You can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because you reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and you would do the same thing in relation to a person whose health and safety might be at risk because of a different physical condition.

For example:

- The owner of a fairground bumper-car ride displays a notice which states that the ride is unsuitable for people with back injuries. When they also refuse to allow a heavily pregnant woman to go on the ride, this is likely to be allowed because of this exception.
- A beauty therapist refuses a particular treatment to a pregnant woman which they would also refuse to someone who had a heart condition. This is likely to be allowed because of this exception.

### Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires

Equality good practice can win you new customers or clients, or help you to keep existing ones, because you are showing that you aim to treat everyone well. It can also help you to avoid court claims, because you have shown that you have done everything you could be expected to do to make sure unlawful discrimination does not happen.

This guide tells you what equality law says you must and must not do to avoid unlawful discrimination.

If you want to be sure you are doing this, it is a good idea to:

- use an **equality policy** to help you check that you have thought about equality in the way you plan what you do and how you do it
- give **equality training** to everyone in your business who deals with customers or clients, to make sure they know the right and wrong ways to behave.

You may want to target people with a particular protected characteristic through **positive action** if they are currently missing out on your services. To do this, you must show that people with a particular protected characteristic have a different need or a track record of disadvantage or low participation in an activity.

## Particular types of business

The next part of this guide gives examples of particular issues that may affect:

- businesses selling goods, such as shops and petrol stations
- banks and other financial services providers
- builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services
- estate agents, letting agents and property management companies
- gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers
- hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons
- hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs
- theatres and other entertainment venues
- designers and manufacturers of goods – who are only covered in specific circumstances.

Even if your business is not in this list, equality law still applies to you. Read this guide and work out how to apply what it says to your business. It will help you not only to avoid unlawful discrimination, but will often mean you provide a better service to a wide range of customers.

### ***Businesses selling products, such as shops and petrol stations***

Equality law applies to every business that provides goods, facilities or services to the public or a section of the public.

This includes any business, large or small, that is selling goods. This could be anything from somebody who sells cosmetics door-to-door through to a large supermarket or electrical retailer.

It also includes you if you sell something alongside another service, for example, you are a garage that sells cars as well as servicing cars for customers.

It doesn't matter whether your service is free, for example, a stall handing out free newspapers, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Also look at:

Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

For many shops, especially small shops, the biggest question will be what reasonable adjustments they need to make to make sure that disabled people who want to buy from them are able to.

What is reasonable will depend, among other considerations, on the size and nature of your business. Just because you cannot do everything does not mean it is alright to do nothing. You must think about what it is reasonable for you to change so that disabled people with a range of different impairments are able to buy your goods.

This might include changes to the **physical features** of your premises for people who have a mobility impairment or a visual impairment, and thinking about how you (and your staff, if you have any) communicate with people.

Because the adjustments and what is reasonable for a business to do depend on the circumstances, the following are examples, not an exhaustive list.

Even if a business can't afford things like a permanent ramp and automatic doors, or is refused planning permission (and considerations like these may be factors in deciding if an adjustment is reasonable for you to make), it could, for example:

- Keep a temporary ramp just inside the door; install a simple doorbell next to the door and put a typed notice in the shop window next to the bell saying 'if you require assistance, please ring this bell' and put other notices up on the front of the counter offering assistance.
- Explain to all staff the duty to make reasonable adjustments (a note about what this means could be kept behind the till). For example, greeting customers if staff notice they have a visual impairment and offering assistance, and being ready to open the door/set up the ramp for anyone who rings the bell.
- Spend a small amount of money on a portable induction loop (which is usually contained in a small box) to make it easier for customers who use hearing aids to hear what is said to them, and make sure staff keep the loop switched on and on the counter but know they can pick it up if they need to go with a customer to the shelves. Putting a notice about the loop on the door could mean winning extra customers.
- Make the shop's entrance a different colour from the surrounding shop front to assist customers with a visual impairment.

- Designate any parking spaces close to the shop entrance as for disabled customers and make sure that non-disabled customers are challenged if they park in them.
- Move display units at the entrance of a small shop which otherwise stop wheelchair users entering, provided the units could go somewhere else without any significant loss of selling space.
- Take special orders for items for disabled customers if the business would take them for non-disabled customers.

For example:

A disabled customer who has a visual impairment wishes to buy a large-print edition of a book from a bookshop. The bookshop does not stock large-print books (nor does equality law say it has to). However, the disabled customer asks the bookshop to order a large-print copy of the book. If the bookshop would usually take special orders from non-disabled customers, a refusal to accept the disabled customer's order is likely to be unlawful.

Even if your shop is small, it is unlikely to be alright to refuse to serve a disabled person, for example, by saying that a nearby larger shop can offer them a better service. However, depending on the nature and size of your business and the type of goods you sell, it may be possible for a reasonable adjustment to be made to change how you interact with the customer.

For example:

- If a shop cannot provide a fitting room suitable for a wheelchair user, it could ask a customer to buy the clothes and try them on at home, making it clear that it will refund their money without question if they decide to return the clothes within a certain period, whereas usually only faulty goods could be returned.
- In some circumstances, it may be acceptable for a shop to take goods out to a customer in the street, but this will very much depend on the nature of the business and if there are any alternative ways round the shop's lack of accessibility, such as taking goods to a customer's home for them to look at and make a choice. It would not be acceptable to discuss the sale in the street, where a customer was expected to provide any personal information which other people could overhear, if this is not something a non-disabled customer has to put up with, or if doing this involved any loss of dignity, for example, expecting someone to make a choice of underwear in the street. So do not assume that this is a possible reasonable adjustment for your shop and its staff.

Petrol stations must make reasonable adjustments too.

For example:

At a petrol station, the manager decides that an assistant will help disabled people use the petrol pumps on request. It places a prominent notice at the pumps advertising this and a bell to ring. All new staff are told what they have to do if the bell rings: go out to the pump to serve the customer, and deal with payment. A further step could be to offer to fetch any other goods that the customer wants from the shop. In this situation, staff training and attitudes are just as important as providing the bell. The reasonable adjustment will not have been properly put in place if the assistant fails to respond to the bell, delays for a long time, or is rude to the customer in carrying out the transaction because they resent the extra effort.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4 including how to work out what is reasonable.

## ***Banks and other financial services providers***

Equality law applies to financial services providers, including banks, insurance companies, building societies, credit card companies, loan companies, hire purchase companies and credit unions.

### **Possible issues for your business**

You must not **discriminate unlawfully** because of a **protected characteristic** when giving or refusing people access to financial services such as bank accounts, overdrafts, credit and debit cards, loans, mortgages and hire purchase agreements.

If you provide insurance, pensions or annuities, there are some differences in relation to disability. If you can meet a number of strict conditions, which are explained in detail in this guide, it may be possible for you to take this protected characteristic into account when making decisions, for example when setting premiums and benefits.

There is also a more general exception permitting age to be taken into account by businesses when providing financial services, which is also explained below.

## How people are treated when they use or want to use your services

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Also look at:

Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres

Remember, it doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, when a member of staff gives information to a customer, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

It is important to avoid making assumptions about people that may lead to discrimination because of a protected characteristic.

For example:

- A mortgage provider only gives mortgages to people who work full time, assuming that part-time workers won't be reliable at making payments. Although this condition would apply to both sexes, it is likely to adversely affect more women than men since more women work part time. The mortgage provider would have to **objectively justify** the condition to avoid its being **indirect discrimination**. The right sort of approach is to look at the person's income or employment history, not their full- or part-time working status.
- A disabled person who is a long-term patient in a psychiatric hospital wishes to open a bank account. The bank incorrectly assumes that because they are in a hospital they cannot manage their own affairs. It refuses to open an account unless it is provided with an enduring power of attorney. The bank continues with its refusal despite being provided with good evidence that the person has full capacity to manage her own affairs. This is the wrong approach. It is probably **direct discrimination** because of disability. A better approach is to accept the evidence that has been given.
- A transsexual woman is questioned very closely with extra security questions whenever she uses telephone banking services because the pitch of her voice is low. This would probably count as providing a service on worse terms. A better approach would be for the bank to train its staff not to make judgments about the identity of customers based on what they sound like.

It is important to avoid discrimination in the way in which records are kept and changes are made to people's personal information.

For example:

A transsexual woman is asked for a **Gender Recognition Certificate** (GRC) when she supplies supporting documentation of her new name and asks to have her records changed. It is not necessary for her to have a GRC to have the protected characteristic of gender reassignment. If the bank asks her for more proof than it would ask someone else who changed their name for another reason, this may amount to direct discrimination.

If you are a financial service provider, you need to think particularly about different communication needs that disabled people may have, and how to combine meeting these needs with the requirement of confidentiality. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's needs in this way may be a **reasonable adjustment**. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people at in Chapter 4.

For example:

- A bank has a policy not to accept calls from customers through a third party. This could amount to indirect discrimination against a disabled person with a learning disability who may use a support worker to call the bank. The right sort of approach is to make sure the customer's records show anyone who deals with them that they may be communicating using a support worker. This is also likely to be a reasonable adjustment.
- A credit union provides information on an audio CD about its services. A customer with a visual impairment can use the CD at home to decide whether to open an account. This is an example of the right sort of approach, where the credit union is making a reasonable adjustment.
- A person with a hearing impairment who lip-reads as their main form of communication wants a secured loan from a bank. In the initial stages, it might be reasonable for the bank to communicate with them by providing printed literature or information displayed on a computer screen. However, before a secured loan agreement is signed, this particular bank usually gives a borrower an oral explanation of its contents to make sure that the customer understands the implications of what they are agreeing to. At that stage it is likely to be the right thing for the bank to arrange for a qualified lip-speaker to be present (with the customer's consent) so that any complex aspects of the agreement can be fully explained and communicated.
- An independent financial adviser insists that a disabled person with a learning disability brings a relative with them to an appointment to carry out a financial review, despite the disabled person not wishing to do this. This may result in a breach of confidentiality for the disabled person, and would therefore probably be



providing a service on worse terms. A better approach is for the financial adviser to find an independent advocacy service to support them, which may also (depending on the circumstances) be a reasonable adjustment.

## Insurance

Insurance and similar financial products involving the assessment of risk include annuities, life insurance, buildings and contents insurance, accident insurance, travel insurance, payment protection insurance, mortgage protection insurance, health insurance and critical illness cover.

In general, an insurance provider must not discriminate against a person because of a protected characteristic in relation to providing them with insurance products or in the terms of the products themselves, for example, premiums and benefits.

Ways in which an insurance provider could be in breach of equality law by discriminating because of a protected characteristic include:

- Charging a higher premium to people with a protected characteristic or giving them lower benefits or refusing them insurance altogether, either because of the protected characteristic or because you apply a condition to the policy which has a worse impact on people with that protected characteristic and you cannot **objectively justify** this.

There is an exception allowing service providers to continue to use a person's age as a criterion in designing, pricing and offering financial services, which includes insurance services. Some exceptions may also apply to disability (see below). No exceptions apply to the other protected characteristics.

For example:

An insurance company always refuses insurance to people who give a caravan site as their address. A Gypsy applies to insure their caravan which is kept on one of these sites. The insurer refuses the policy. Unless the insurer can **objectively justify** this decision, this may be indirect discrimination because of race.

- Asking some people to produce more evidence or a different type of evidence to support an insurance claim, if this is because of a protected characteristic.

For example:

An insurance company asks a long-term UK resident who has a UK driving licence but who was born outside the UK (in other words, they have a different national origin) to produce additional proof of identity when they make a claim on their car insurance, whereas people who were born in the UK are only asked for their driving licence.

If an insurance company insisted that a man applying for life insurance takes an HIV test before they will give him life insurance because his application form discloses that he is gay by referring to his male partner, this would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of sexual orientation.

However, it may be necessary to ask for more evidence relating to a protected characteristic where this is relevant to the claim. For example, a claim against health insurance (which may relate to a person's disability) could require medical evidence.

### ***Existing contracts***

In relation to **insurance business**, contracts entered into before 1 October 2010 do not have to be changed unless they are renewed or reviewed after that date (other than a general review of pricing structure). If they are renewed or reviewed, they may need to be brought into line with the Equality Act 2010 so that they do not discriminate because of a protected characteristic except if permitted by the exceptions for age and disability considered below.

For example:

An existing life insurance policy which was taken out in 1989, and has not been subsequently renewed or reviewed, continues to be lawful and does not have to be altered to comply with equality law. If it is renewed after 1 October 2010, the policy must be altered if it would otherwise discriminate because of any of the protected characteristics except in line with the exceptions for age and disability listed below.

## ***Taking certain protected characteristics into account***

It may sometimes be possible for an insurance business provider to refuse cover to someone or offer cover on different terms because of age or disability.

Different tests apply for these two different protected characteristics.

### ***Age***

An insurance business provider (and other service providers providing financial services) may continue to use a person's age as a criterion in designing, pricing and offering financial services products.

However, when it conducts an assessment of risk for the purpose of providing the financial service it must ensure that in so far as it involves a consideration of the customer's age:

- It is carried out by reference to information which is relevant to the assessment of risk, and
- The information is from a source on which it is reasonable to rely.

For example:

- A medical insurance provider could take account of a customer's age in pricing a health insurance policy where there exists a body of reliable medical evidence that supports a connection between the customer's age and the risk of developing medical conditions covered by the policy.
- However, it may not do so where the assessment of risk is based on untested assumptions, stereotypes or generalisations or evidence from an unreliable source.

The provider also must not behave towards customers in a way that could amount to **harassment** or **victimisation** relating to age.

### ***Disability***

Providers of 'insurance business' can only justify treating disabled people (including people with a **past disability**) differently when providing them with insurance if:

- the different treatment is by reference to relevant information from a source on which it is reasonable for you to rely, and
- it is reasonable for you to treat the person differently.

This means it is important to have relevant information from a reliable source when making decisions about offering insurance services to a disabled person. Using untested assumptions, stereotypes or generalisations can lead to unlawful discrimination.

For example:

- Someone who was previously a disabled person because of a mental health condition is charged a higher premium for travel insurance because of a blanket exclusion policy, even though they have not had any recurrence of their condition for many years. The insurer does not have any information that the person's past condition involves a particular risk now. It is unlikely the insurer will be able to show that the different treatment is based on relevant information from a source on which it is reasonable to rely, and that it is reasonable to treat the person differently because of their past disability. Unless it can demonstrate this, the insurer must not charge higher premiums or refuse them insurance altogether.
- A disabled person being treated for cancer applies for a life insurance policy. The insurance provider refuses the application on the basis of a medical report from the person's doctor, which makes it clear that the prognosis is as yet far from certain. This decision is based on relevant information from a source on which it is likely to be reasonable to rely and it is also likely to be reasonable to treat the disabled person differently because of it.

## **Financial services provided by an employer as part of an employment package**

If insurance or a group personal pension is provided by an **employer** as part of an employment package, the employer rather than the financial services provider must avoid unlawful discrimination because of a protected characteristic.

There are also particular rules about occupational pensions provided by employers, which are treated as part of an employee's pay.

You can find more information about both these situations in the Equality and Human Rights Commission guide *What equality law means for you as an employer: pay and benefits*.

## ***Builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public. This includes local trades people like builders, plumbers, locksmiths, electricians and gardeners.

It also includes larger companies who may specialise in particular areas of building work like heating engineering, replacement windows, loft conversions, conservatories and extensions.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, information about services which is provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

When you run a business like this, you will often have access to people's homes. This means you may have knowledge about a client's or customer's **protected characteristics** which you would not have without this access. It is important you do not use your knowledge in a way that puts your client or customer at a disadvantage, such as by breaching client confidentiality, if this would count as providing them with a worse service or on worse terms.

For example:

A plumber works on a radiator in a client's main bedroom and notices from clothing and toiletries that they are clearly in a same-sex relationship. The plumber tells their work colleagues, to the extent that the next time someone different arrives to work on the heating system, they treat the client in a hostile way. The first plumber would not have spoken about an opposite sex couple's living arrangements in the same way and it has led to the client receiving the service on worse terms, so what they have done may be unlawful discrimination because of sexual orientation. The right sort of approach is for the plumber to avoid commenting on the client's personal circumstances where these relate to a protected characteristic, and to respect client confidentiality in the same way that they would, for example, in relation to the security arrangements at a person's home.

You need to think particularly about different communication needs that disabled people may have. A failure to communicate or understand an instruction may lead to very expensive or dangerous mistakes. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's

needs in this way may be a **reasonable adjustment**. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

For example:

- A builder usually provides a written quotation before starting work. Instead, a disabled client who is visually impaired asks the builder to go through the quotation in detail while the client makes notes on their computer as a record for themselves of the quotation. Holding this meeting is likely to be a reasonable adjustment and, if so, this is an example of the right approach.
- A heating repair company installs an SMS alert system for customers needing emergency repairs to their heating systems. They do this so that their existing and potential deaf customers are able to benefit from their services as easily as other customers. This is an example of the right sort of thing to do.

## ***Estate agents, letting agents and property management companies***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public. This includes estate agents, letting agents and property management companies.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, information about properties which is provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Other issues you need to consider are:

- access to confidential information about a client's **protected characteristics**
- **reasonable adjustments** to remove barriers for disabled people
- instructions to discriminate
- managing premises.

### **Access to confidential information about a client's protected characteristics**

When you run an estate agency or similar business, you will often have access to people's homes. This means you may have knowledge about a client's or customer's

protected characteristics which you would not have without this access. It is important you do not use your knowledge in a way that puts your client or customer at a disadvantage, such as by breaching client confidentiality, if this would count as providing them with a worse service or the same service on worse terms.

For example:

An estate agent visits a client's home to draw up the property details so the house can be put on the market. From letters about medical appointments pinned on a notice board, the estate agent becomes aware that the client is a disabled person who has multiple sclerosis. The estate agent mentions this to a colleague and when the client next contacts the office, the colleague takes the call and asks about their symptoms, which makes the client feel upset that their privacy has been invaded. Even though the colleague did not mean any harm, the client is receiving the service on worse terms than a non-disabled person who would not have been treated in this way and it is therefore possible that this is unlawful discrimination because of disability. The right sort of approach is for the estate agent to avoid commenting on the client's personal circumstances where these relate to a protected characteristic, and avoiding this sort of breach of client confidentiality.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

When you are acting for clients in letting and selling property, you need to think particularly about different communication and accessibility needs that disabled people may have. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's needs in this way may be a reasonable adjustment. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

For example:

- An estate agent checks with potential purchasers how they would like to receive property particulars. This gives an opportunity for disabled people with a visual impairment to ask for them to be sent electronically. Providing the chance to request the information in a particular format and then sending the information in that format are examples of reasonable adjustments the estate agent has made.
- A letting agent works out of a first floor office without a lift. The agent's marketing material makes it clear that they will make home visits to potential clients who have a mobility impairment who would not otherwise be able to access their services. The letting agent has made a reasonable adjustment.



## Instructions to discriminate

As well as not unlawfully discriminating against a client yourself, you must not accept an **instruction to discriminate** from a property seller or landlord.

If you accept an instruction from a property seller or landlord to discriminate in disposing of housing premises (which includes letting or selling), this would be against equality law, and the person could bring a legal claim against you.

For example:

- A landlord asks a letting agent to say that their flat to let has been taken if a lesbian or gay couple ask about renting it. If the letting agent agrees, they would be just as liable as the landlord for direct discrimination because of sexual orientation.
- A property seller asks an estate agent to say that the asking price of a property has gone up if a person of a particular national or ethnic origin expresses interest in viewing the property. If the estate agent agrees, this would be direct discrimination because of race, and both the property owner and the estate agent could be taken to court by the would-be buyer.

## Managing premises

If you are managing premises as part of your business, whether those are residential or commercial premises, you must not unlawfully discriminate against, harass or victimise someone who occupies the property in the way you allow the person to use a benefit or facility associated with the property, by evicting the person or by otherwise treating them unfavourably.

For example:

- A property management company manages and controls a residential block of flats on behalf of the landlord-owner. The block has a basement swimming pool and a communal garden for use by the tenants. A disabled tenant with a severe disfigurement is told by the company that they can only use the swimming pool at restricted times because other tenants feel uncomfortable in their presence. This would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of disability and/or discrimination arising from disability.
- A property management company refuses to allow a lesbian tenant to use facilities which are available to other tenants, or deliberately neglects to inform her about facilities which are available for the use of other tenants, because she had previously made a claim of discrimination against the manager. This would almost certainly be victimisation.
- A property management company responds to requests for maintenance issues more slowly or less favourably for one tenant than similar requests from other tenants, because the tenant has a learning disability. This would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of disability in the management of premises.

You may in some circumstances be required to make reasonable adjustments to the premises you manage or the way you manage them to remove barriers for disabled people. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

## *Gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers*

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes sport and leisure related services, such as:

- leisure centres
- swimming pools
- tennis clubs and tennis courts
- golf clubs
- rugby, cricket and football clubs
- ice rinks
- riding schools and equestrian centres
- gyms
- health and fitness clubs
- rowing and sailing clubs
- adventure centres
- sporting venues.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, free swimming sessions in a swimming pool run on behalf of a local authority, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Are you an association or a service provider?**

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are, in equality law, **associations**), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an activity
- allowing anyone to join your leisure club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee or if the service is free. If, for example, you allow a person to have a free trial session, you are still providing them with a service.

If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- Do you have more than 25 members and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to this is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider.

For example:

A private golf club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it opens its golf course, café and shop to members of the public on certain days of the week or when spectators attend to watch club competitions. If someone does not have to be a club member to take part in a competition, then the golf club is also providing competitors with a service.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your **members, associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Particular issues for you to think about are:

- whether, if you want to, you can provide separate services for men and women or a service for only men or only women
- access to changing rooms and other facilities
- what you say about what people can or must wear to take part in your activities
- whether you can put conditions on who takes part in your activities, based on people's **protected characteristics**.

## Providing separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women

If you want to provide **separate services** for men and women or a **single-sex service** for men or women only, then you need to be able to **objectively justify** providing your service in this way. You must meet other conditions as well, such as showing that a joint service would be less effective, or that men's needs and women's needs are different.

For example:

A gym restricts access to its small sauna to men at some times and women at other times. Each sex has access to a mixture of daytime and evening use. At the times when the opposite sex is excluded, the gym is providing a single-sex service for the sex which is allowed to use the sauna. The gym believes the restriction is **objectively justified** and can also show that the sauna may be used by more than one person and a woman might object to the presence of a man (or vice versa). It is likely that the provision of the service in this way will come within the exception.

You can read more about this in 'Separate services for men and women and single-sex services' at page 15.

## Access to changing rooms and other facilities

You may need to make **reasonable adjustments** to make sure that disabled people are able to change in the same privacy and comfort as non-disabled people.

For example:

The changing facilities in a women-only gym are located in a room that is only accessible by stairs. The gym owner suggests to disabled users of the gym with mobility impairments that they can change in a corner of the gym itself. This is unlikely to be a reasonable alternative method of making the service available, since it may significantly infringe upon people's dignity. However, providing an alternative private room to change in may be a reasonable adjustment.

You must also avoid discriminating against transsexual people. Treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the physical sex recorded at their birth~~they were born with~~) unless you can **objectively justify** treating them differently.

For example:

A clothes shop has separate changing areas for men and for women with individual cubicles. The shop concludes it would not be appropriate or necessary to exclude a transsexual woman from the female changing room as the privacy and decency of all users can be assured by the provision of the separate cubicles.

Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so.

~~Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes.~~

## What you say about what people can or must wear to take part in your activities

Obviously, sometimes you will require specialist or safety clothing or equipment to be worn by participants in your activities. If you make this a condition of participating in your activities, and a person says that they cannot comply with the condition because of a protected characteristic, and can show that the condition has a disproportionate impact on people who share that characteristic, you will need to **objectively justify** the condition you have put in place.

For example:

A riding stables says that all riders must wear a riding hat or helmet which meets a particular safety standard. This is because the approved helmet protects riders from serious head injury in the event of a fall. The riding stable refuses to exempt someone who usually keeps their head covered with a particular type of head covering for religious reasons. Provided the stables can **objectively justify** the refusal, this will not be unlawful **indirect discrimination** because of religion or belief, even though the requirement has a worse impact on the individual and others who share their protected characteristic.

If it is necessary to change what a disabled person wears to take part in your activities, you need to consider whether making this change amounts to a reasonable adjustment. You can read more about reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

## Whether you can put conditions on who takes part in your activities, based on people's protected characteristics

- **Health and safety and disabled people:** Make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk. Disabled people are entitled to make the

same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a service provider to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

- **Health and safety and pregnancy:** A service provider can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because they reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and they would do the same thing in relation to a person with a different physical condition.

For example:

A gym restricts pregnant women's access to its steam room because it has advice from its trade association that pregnant women may be at risk from the high temperatures. It also restricts access to the steam room for people with high blood pressure and heart conditions. This is likely to come within the exception.

- **Separate sporting competitions:** Separate sporting competitions can be organised for men and women where:
  - physical strength, stamina or physique are major factors in determining success or failure, and
  - one sex is generally at a disadvantage in comparison with the other.

Separate competition for girls and boys may or may not be allowed, depending on the age and stage of development of the children who will be competing. At some ages and in some sports, it is not possible to say that boys and girls have significant differences of physical strength or stamina or that one sex is at a disadvantage in comparison with the other. Only if it is possible to say this will separate competitions be allowed.

You must not restrict the participation of a transsexual person in such competitions unless this is strictly necessary to uphold fair or safe competition, but not otherwise. In other words, treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which they present (as opposed to the ~~physical~~ sex recorded at their birth~~they were born with~~) unless there is evidence that they have an unfair advantage or there would be a risk to the safety of competitors which might occur in some close contact sports.

Sports teams can continue to select on the basis of nationality, place of birth or residence if the competitor or team is representing a country, place, area or related association or because of the rules of the competition.

Where participants in a sport or other competitive activity (such as bridge or chess) are in general put at a disadvantage compared to persons of another age group by their physical or mental strength, agility, stamina, physique, mobility, maturity or manual dexterity, you can restrict participation by reference to age in so far as it is necessary to secure fair competition or the safety of competitors, to comply with the rules of a national or international competition, or to increase participation in that activity.

This exception will allow, for example:

- selection on the basis of age for national and international tournaments where the rules of the tournament in question require this.
- Under 21s football tournaments or veterans tennis leagues.

But will not allow:

- Age limits based only on historic, habitual or social reasons not related to securing fair competition or the safety of competitors, complying with the rules of a national or international competition, or increasing participation in the activity, which cannot otherwise be **objectively justified**.

## ***Hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes hairdressers, barbers, beauty salons, spas and manicure services among others. This ranges from sole traders who visit people in their own homes to large national chains.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a free haircut provided to people willing to be models, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Particular issues for you to think about are:

- whether, if you want to, you can provide services for people with a particular protected characteristic, or separate services for men and women, or a service for only men or only women
- access to washbasins, changing rooms, treatment rooms and other facilities
- whether you can put conditions on who uses your services, based on people's **protected characteristics**.



## *Providing services for people with a particular protected characteristic or separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women*

### **Services for people with a particular protected characteristic**

If you normally supply services only for people with a particular protected characteristic (such as gay men or lesbians), you can carry on providing the service the same way.

You can refuse to provide the service to someone who does not have that characteristic if you reasonably think it is impracticable for you to provide them with the service.

For example:

A hairdresser provides African Caribbean hairdressing services. Equality law does not force the hairdresser to provide European-style hairdressing services. However, if a white European woman asks for her hair to be styled in a way that the hairdresser would provide to an African Caribbean woman, such as braiding, the hairdresser cannot refuse to do this unless the hairdresser reasonably believes it would be impracticable, for example, because of the length or nature of the person's hair.

You can also target your advertising or marketing at a group with particular protected characteristics, so long as you do not suggest you will not serve people with a particular characteristic (unless one of the exceptions applies). You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

### **Separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women**

If you run a beauty-related business and want to provide separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for men or women only, then you need to be able to **objectively justify** providing your service in this way. You must meet other conditions as well, such as that a joint service would be less effective, or that men's needs and women's needs are different.

For example:

A beauty therapist who operates on her own and provides massages in clients' own homes only provides this service to women. She believes the restriction is **objectively justified** and it also involves physical contact between the client and herself, which is something she has a reasonable objection to. It is likely that the provision of the service in this way will come within the exception.

You can read more about this in 'Separate services for men and women and single-sex services' at page 15.

## Access to washbasins, treatment rooms, and other facilities

You need to consider what **reasonable adjustments** are needed to remove barriers to disabled people in using your services. This is not necessarily about **physical features** at your premises; you could adapt the way you provide your services.

For example:

A beauty salon usually carries out a facial for clients by asking them to lie on a high bed in a treatment room. A client who is a disabled person with a mobility impairment would not be able to get up onto the high bed. The salon decides that it will consider alternative ways of carrying out its services as a reasonable adjustment, such as carrying out the facial for a client sitting in a chair or lying on a lower couch if this is available. It advertises on its marketing material that it will make reasonable adjustments for disabled people, showing that it has thought in advance about the need for reasonable adjustments, rather than waiting for an individual client to ask to access the service.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

You must also avoid discriminating against transsexual people in accessing your services or using your facilities. Treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the ~~physical~~ sex recorded at their birth~~they were born with~~) unless you can **objectively justify** treating them differently. Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so. Make sure you and your staff take care to avoid a decision based on ignorance or prejudice, as this may lead to unlawful discrimination.

~~Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes.~~

## Whether you can put conditions on who uses your services, based on people's protected characteristics

- **Health and safety and disabled people:** Make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk. Disabled people are entitled to make the same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a **service provider** to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and

managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

For example:

A spa refuses to allow disabled people who are receiving chemotherapy for cancer to have aromatherapy massages. This is because the spa owner understands there is uncertainty about the interaction of aromatherapy oils and the drugs used in chemotherapy. A disabled person who is affected by the refusal says this is indirect discrimination because it stops her and other disabled people in the same position receiving the service. Provided the spa owner can **objectively justify** the refusal, this will not be unlawful discrimination because of disability. However, a reasonable adjustment might be to offer a similar massage using unscented oil instead.

- **Health and safety and pregnancy:** A service provider can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because they reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and they would do the same thing in relation to a person with a different physical condition.

For example:

A beauty salon states that some of its treatments are unsuitable for pregnant women and people with high blood pressure or heart conditions. Provided it reasonably believes that providing these treatments would create a risk to a pregnant woman's health and safety, the refusal would probably come within this exception.

## ***Hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes a wide range of different businesses and services. These include:

- hotels
- bed and breakfast establishments
- guest houses
- self-catering holidays
- hostels
- restaurants
- cafés
- bars and nightclubs
- public houses
- takeaway food establishments.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a takeaway food delivery service provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

- You may need to work out if you are an **association** (which is what equality law calls some organisations that describe themselves as clubs) or a **service provider**.
- You need to avoid unlawful discrimination if you set conditions on who you serve and the terms and conditions on which you serve them.
- Because your service is likely to be provided at a particular place, you need to consider **reasonable adjustments** to your premises or to the way you deliver your services.

## Are you an association or a service provider?

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are what equality law calls **associations**), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an event
- allowing anyone to join your dining club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee or if the service is free.

If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- do you have 25 or more **members** and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to that is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider. For example:

A private members' club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it opens its restaurant and function rooms to members of the public on certain days of the week.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your members or **associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members, associate members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## Deciding who to serve

If you decide who to serve and who not to serve based on a **protected characteristic**, you risk discriminating against your customers.

For example:

- A café owner must not ask a woman to leave their cafe because she is breastfeeding her baby.
- ‘Ladies’ nights’ where only women receive free drinks, ‘two-for-one’ offers or free admission are almost certainly direct sex discrimination against men. The same would be true of any other offer which was restricted to people with a particular protected characteristic, except for disability or if the offer was an age-related concession.
- A hotel or bed and breakfast cannot refuse to give a shared bedroom to a gay or lesbian couple if they give a shared bedroom to opposite sex partners. Nor could they insist on them having a twin room if they would offer a double room to opposite sex partners, and there are double rooms available.
- A pub cannot refuse to serve a customer because they are a transsexual person or with a transsexual person. Nor should the transsexual person be given a worse standard of service, for example, by allowing other customers to make hostile remarks ~~or refusing them access to the toilets appropriate to the sex in which they present.~~
- A disabled person has epilepsy. The owner of a bar knows this and refuses to serve them because, he says, he is worried about other customers being disturbed if they have a seizure. This is likely to be **direct** disability **discrimination** and/or (less likely) **discrimination arising from disability**.
- A disabled person with a learning disability wishes to book a hotel room. The hotel receptionist pretends that all rooms are taken in order to refuse their booking because of their impairment. This is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.
- Waiting staff in a restaurant place a person with a severe facial disfigurement at a table out of sight of other customers, despite other tables being free, because they think other customers will find it embarrassing to look at the person. This is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.

You can still tell customers what standards of behaviour you want from them.

However, sometimes how someone behaves may be linked to a protected characteristic.

If you set standards of behaviour for your customers or clients which have a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not have that characteristic, you need to make sure that you can **objectively justify** what you have done. Otherwise, it will be indirect discrimination.

If you do set standards of behaviour, you must make **reasonable adjustments** to them for disabled people and avoid **discrimination arising from disability**.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

If you run a hospitality business, you will need to make sure your premises are accessible to disabled people by making reasonable adjustments. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

Reasonable adjustments are not just about physical accessibility, although this is important for some disabled people, but can be about the way in which services are offered.

For example:

A hotel's reservations system allocates rooms on a first-come, first-served basis as guests arrive and register. The effect is that on some occasions the specially refurbished rooms that it has for disabled customers are allocated to non-disabled guests, and late-arriving disabled guests cannot be accommodated in those rooms. The hotel decides to change its reservation policy so that the accessible rooms are either reserved for disabled guests in advance or are allocated last of all. This is likely to be a reasonable adjustment for the hotel to have to make.

Adjustments only have to be made if they are reasonable, taking a range of factors into account, including the nature of the business.

For example:

A nightclub with low-level lighting is very unlikely to have to adjust the lighting to accommodate customers who are partially sighted if this would fundamentally change the atmosphere or ambience of the club. This is unlikely to be a reasonable adjustment.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

## ***Theatres and other entertainment venues***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes a wide range of different businesses and services. Within this, it would include lots of different entertainment venues both large and small, such as:

- theatres
- cinemas
- music venues – everything from a large opera house through to a local jazz café
- comedy clubs
- arts festivals, including music and children's festivals.

This also applies to places that are not usually used for entertainment but have occasions when members of the public do use them for that purpose. For example, a church which holds lunchtime music recitals or an empty shop which is opened up for an arts festival.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a free concert, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.



## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

You may need to work out if you are an **association** or a **service provider**.

Because your activities take place at a particular place, you will need to make sure a venue is accessible to disabled people by making **reasonable adjustments**. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

## Are you an association or a service provider?

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are what equality law calls associations), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an event
- allowing anyone to join your jazz club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee, or if the service is free. If, for example, you allow a person to watch a concert for free, you are still providing them with a service.

If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- Are there 25 or more **members** and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to that is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider.

For example:

A private members' club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it allows members of the public to attend stand-up comedy events held in its function rooms.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your members, **associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

Reasonable adjustments are not just about changes to **physical features** or the addition of **auxiliary aids** such as a hearing loop, although these can be important to some disabled people. Consider providing information (such as programmes and publicity material) in **alternative formats** and offering an additional ticket for free to a disabled person who needs to bring an assistant.

If your venue is of a type that means that you need to restrict services based on health and safety considerations, make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk.

Disabled people are entitled to make the same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a service provider to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

For example:

A cinema manager turns away a wheelchair user because they assume, without checking, that the disabled person could be in danger in the event of a fire. Although the manager genuinely believes that refusing admission to wheelchair users is necessary in order not to endanger the health or safety of either the disabled person or other cinemagoers, they have not made enquiries as to whether there are adequate means of escape (which there are). The belief is therefore unlikely to be reasonably held. In these circumstances, the refusal of admission is unlikely to be justified. The right approach is for the manager to check the facts and to make a decision based upon them.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

## **Design and manufacture of goods**

If your business is as a designer or manufacturer of goods then equality law does not cover your business operations as they relate to designing or making goods.

You do not have to make changes to your physical products, packaging or instructions.

You can also target the advertising or marketing of your products at a group with particular protected characteristics. You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

### **Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires**

Even though you do not have to, it can be good business sense to make goods, packaging and instructions more accessible to all potential and existing customers.

For example:

- A manufacturer of bath and skincare products puts Braille labelling on its packaging and on the plastic bottles so blind customers who read Braille can tell products apart when using them. People for whom this makes a difference are more likely to buy these products.
- A manufacturer of doorbells makes a system that incorporates a portable wireless receiver. The receiver can be carried round the home to wherever the person is at the time and it rings when the doorbell is pressed. The manufacturer decides to add a bulb to the receiver which lights up when the doorbell is pressed. This means that people with a hearing impairment will find it useful as well as anyone who is, for example, listening to music with headphones on.

There are two ways you might be covered as a **service provider**:

- If you provide information which is more than just an advertisement, you may need to supply this in **alternative formats**, if doing this would be a reasonable adjustment, which it is may be, depending on the circumstances. You can read more about making **reasonable adjustments** to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.
- If you sell or give the goods you make directly to the public, then you will be covered by equality law as if you are a shop.

So, for example, if a company sells its products by mail order, over the internet or through a factory shop, then it will have duties under equality law as a service provider.

## ***Services and public functions***

Some of the activities of services providers are called public functions. It is important to know whether you carry out any public functions because other laws will apply to you if you do.

In summary, a service provider will be carrying out public functions where its activities are done on behalf of a state body (like a local authority, prison, government department etc) and they are the sort of activities that only the state could carry out or ask a service provider to carry out on its behalf. Examples of public functions include: determining frameworks for entitlement to benefits or services; law enforcement; receiving someone into prison or immigration detention facility; planning control; licensing; parking controls; trading standards; environmental health; regulatory functions; investigation of complaints; child protection. This is not an exhaustive list.

It will often not matter whether what is being done is technically a service or a public function. This is because, in general, equality law applies in a very similar way to services and to public functions. However, public sector organisations and others who carry out public functions on their behalf have additional legal obligations.

Public sector organisations and service providers who carry out public functions for them, must have what the law calls 'due regard' to the need to eliminate the types of conduct which are prohibited under the Equality Act 2010 and discussed in this guide, and to advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between people who have particular protected characteristics and people who don't. This is called the 'public sector equality duty'. The three aims of the duty apply to all protected characteristics apart from marriage and civil partnership, which is only relevant to the first aim (eliminating discrimination). Thus a body subject to the duty must have due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination because of marriage or civil partnership in the context of employment, where it is prohibited under the Equality Act 2010.

In the case of service providers who are not public authorities, they are only subject to the public sector equality duty in respect of the public functions they carry out.

Some public authorities are also subject to what are known as specific equality duties. These require those public authorities to which they apply to take specific steps that are designed to enable them to better perform the public sector equality duty. The specific duties are different in England, Scotland and Wales.

In addition, public sector organisations and service providers which carry out public functions for them must also comply with the Human Rights Act 1998.

Further information about the public sector equality duties and the Human Rights Act is available from the Equality and Human Rights Commission.

## 2. Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres

Whether you run or work in a business, the public sector, a voluntary or community sector organisation or a club or association, the way you deliver your **services** matters.

You need to make sure that you do what equality law says you must do in relation to:

- the behaviour of staff who are dealing with customers, clients, service users, club members, associate members or **guests** or who are taking decisions about how you provide **goods**, **facilities** or **services** to the public or a section of the public
- the building or other place where you deliver your services if this is open to the public or a section of the public
- advertisements and marketing
- written materials, for example, information leaflets you provide as part of your service
- websites and internet services
- telephone access and call centres.

## Staff behaviour

How you and any staff who work for your organisation behave towards customers, clients, service users, members, associates or guests in relation to their **protected characteristics** will be at the heart of whether your organisation delivers **services** without unlawful discrimination, **harassment** or **victimisation** and whether it makes **reasonable adjustments** for disabled people.

### Equality good practice tip for how you and your staff should behave

Ideally, you want anyone who comes into contact with members of the public to treat everyone they come across with dignity and respect. This will help you provide good customer service (not just without unlawfully discriminating but more generally) and can make customers less likely to complain.

Tell your staff how to behave so that they do not discriminate against people because of a protected characteristic – and make sure you know what this means too. By doing this, you will reduce the risk that you will be held responsible for their behaviour.

Even if the person who has been discriminated against does not bring a legal case against your organisation, your reputation may suffer.

This does not just apply to situations where you and your staff are dealing directly with members of the public, but also to how your services are planned. This is the point at which a decision might be made, a rule might be applied or a way of doing things might be worked out which will affect how someone accesses your services. If this has a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who did not have that characteristic, then it will be **indirect discrimination** unless you are able to **objectively justify** the decision, rule or way of doing things.

So it is important that you and everyone who works for you knows how equality law applies to what you and they are doing.

For how to make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to them, see Chapter 3.

## The building or other place where you deliver your services

If you deliver your services at a particular place or places, such as a building or an open air venue, you must make sure that your customers, clients, service users, members, associate members or guests with a protected characteristic are not unlawfully

discriminated against, harassed or victimised in accessing your premises and you must make reasonable adjustments for disabled people.

You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

You should consider every aspect of your building or other premises, including:

- how people enter
- how they find their way around
- what signs you provide
- how people communicate with staff
- information you provide
- queuing systems, if you have them
- counters and checkouts. if you have them
- accessible toilet facilities.

The way your staff behave and assist your disabled customers can make a big difference to how accessible disabled people find your building and service.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

### **Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires**

You may find it helpful to make one person – which may be you – responsible for checking all these issues for your organisation.

You could make this part of your **equality policy**.

You could ask a range of disabled people – for example, by contacting local disabled people's organisations – what adjustments would make it easier for them to use your services. Then you could decide if the adjustments are reasonable adjustments for you to make.

## **Advertisements and marketing**

An advertisement includes every form of advertisement or notice or marketing material, whether aimed at members of the public or a specialised audience, including:

- in a newspaper or other publication
- by television or radio
- by display of notices
- signs
- labels
- show-cards or goods
- by distribution of samples
- circulars
- catalogues
- price lists or other material
- by exhibition of pictures
- three-dimensional models or filmed material.

Most written and other material published by you is likely to count as an advertisement if its aim is to tell customers or service users about a service.

You can target advertising material at a particular group of people, including a group who share a particular **protected characteristic**.

For example:

- A mortgage company advertises a product as particularly suitable for women by advertising that borrowers can take payment holidays if they take maternity leave.
- A bar advertises in a newspaper mostly bought by lesbian or gay women and gay men.
- A barber has flyers printed only advertising haircuts and listing prices for men.
- A community organisation makes it clear on its website that the lunch club it runs is aimed at people from a particular ethnic background.
- A sporting club advertises that particular sessions are targeted at introducing disabled people to its sport.

But, unless your services are covered by one of the exceptions to equality law, your advertisement must not tell people that, because of a particular protected characteristic,



they cannot use the service, or would not be welcome to use the service, or would receive worse terms in using the service.

For example:

- If someone advertising a service (for example, by putting a notice in a shop window) makes it clear in the advert that people from a particular ethnic group are not welcome as customers, this would amount to **direct discrimination** because of race against people who might have considered using the service but are deterred from doing so because of the advertisement.
- A flyer for a nightclub offering women free admission while men are charged for entry would probably be **unlawful**.
- An advertisement that said 'unsuitable for disabled people' would probably be unlawful.

However, you do not have to make **reasonable adjustments** in advertising your services.

For example:

If you advertise in a newspaper, you do not have to put out an equivalent advertisement on the radio just because disabled people with a visual impairment may not have been able to access the written advertisement.

### Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires

Even though you do not have to make reasonable adjustments when you are advertising your services, you may want to think about advertising in ways that will be accessible to disabled people with a range of impairments, such as Easy Read information for people with a learning disability. Doing this will help more people to access your services.

## Written information

When you provide written information as part of your service, you must not discriminate against, harass or victimise people because of a protected characteristic in:

- what the information itself says
- the way it is provided.

When you provide written information as part of your service, think about providing it **in alternative formats**, such as in Braille, on CD, or electronically, for disabled people who need the information in this form. Although it depends on your circumstances, this is likely to be a **reasonable adjustment** which you must make. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

For example:

- A café whose menu does not often change provides menus in Braille and large print so that customers with different visual impairments can independently use the menu.
- A restaurant changes its menus daily. Because of this, it considers that it is not practicable to provide menus in alternative formats, such as Braille. However, its staff spend a little time reading aloud the menu for blind customers, and the restaurant ensures that there is a large-print copy available.
- A community organisation providing health advice produces its leaflets in a range of alternative formats.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

## Websites and internet services

If you provide services through a website – such as online shopping, direct marketing or advertising – you are known as an **Information Society Service Provider (ISSP)**.

This applies whether you have a one-page website which you maintain yourself or a very sophisticated website maintained by a professional web design company, and covers anything in between.

If someone believes that they have been discriminated against by an ISSP, and the ISSP is established in the UK, they can bring a claim in the UK courts against the UK-based ISSP even if the person is not in the UK, so long as they are in a European Economic Area (EEA) member state.

As an ISSP, you must make sure:

- That you do not allow discriminatory advertisements and information to appear on your website (whatever the advertisement is for).

For example:

- A local newspaper accepts an advertisement which says that jobs at a particular company are only open to people of a particular ethnic or national origin. The newspaper puts it on its website. The advertisement **directly discriminates** because of race, and the newspaper as well as the advertiser may be liable for discrimination: the advertiser as an **employer** and the newspaper as an ISSP.
- That you do not accept requests for the placing of information that unlawfully discriminates against people because of a **protected characteristic** in using a service.

For example:

- An online holiday company established in the UK refuses to take bookings for shared accommodation from same-sex couples. A lesbian or gay couple could bring a claim for direct discrimination because of sexual orientation in the British courts regardless of whether the couple were in the UK or another EEA member state.
- That you make reasonable adjustments to make sure that your website is accessible to disabled people.

## ***Reasonable adjustments***

Where this is a reasonable adjustment (and, as with other written information, it is likely to be), your website must be accessible to all users – this will include, for example:

- people with visual impairments, who use text-to-speech software
- people with manual dexterity impairments, who cannot use a mouse
- people with dyslexia and learning difficulties.

You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

The Royal National Institute of Blind People provides comprehensive information about web accessibility for disabled people with a range of impairments at:  
[http://www.rnib.org.uk/professionals/webaccessibility/Pages/web\\_accessibility.aspx](http://www.rnib.org.uk/professionals/webaccessibility/Pages/web_accessibility.aspx)

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4, including how you can work out what is reasonable in your circumstances.

### **Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires**

If, in your particular circumstances, it is not a reasonable adjustment for you to make all the adjustments necessary to make your website fully accessible to as many people as possible, you could make as many changes as possible to ensure good customer service. This will make it easier for everyone to use your website and mean more people can buy your products or learn about your services.

### ***Exceptions***

Where your role is a limited one – for example, you are only temporarily storing information, and not initiating the transmission, selecting the recipient or selecting or modifying the information in the transmission – you are excused from the responsibilities of an **ISSP**. This excludes, for example, websites that temporarily transmit or store messages between users.

If an ISSP is not based in the UK, then the laws of the country where it is based will apply to it, rather than UK equality law.

For example:

An online retailer, which provides tickets to major sporting events, offers discounts to large groups of men but not women when booking hospitality packages for a football tournament. The online retailer is established in Germany so in this instance a case of direct discrimination because of sex would have to be brought in the German courts regardless of whether the person complaining was in the UK or another EEA member state.

# Telephone access and call centres

You may provide services over the telephone as a main activity – for example, providing a telephone order line for the purchase of goods – or you may have a telephone service as part of your service, for example, telephone banking, or enquiry lines via a call centre.

When you provide telephone information as part of your service, you must not discriminate against, harass or victimise people because of a protected characteristic in:

- what is said when a call is answered
- the way the service is provided.

When you provide services over the telephone, you must make reasonable adjustments for disabled people who would otherwise face a barrier to accessing the service. If it is a reasonable adjustment to provide the service in a different way, then you must do it. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

For example:

- A call centre makes sure that it has a textphone to accept calls from people with a hearing impairment, as well as allowing calls to be made through a third-party interpreter.
- A community organisation offers 'live chat' with its helpline via the internet.
- A small business which offers goods for sale by phone includes an email address and mobile phone number for SMS text messaging in its marketing information and makes it clear that orders will be accepted by these methods as well as by phone.

However, if an individual disabled person asks for an adjustment that you haven't yet considered to enable them to use your service, you will need to make the adjustment if it is reasonable for you to do so.

### 3. When you are responsible for what other people do

It is not just how you personally behave that matters when you are running an organisation providing **goods**, **facilities** or **services** to the public or carrying out public functions.

If another person who is:

- employed by you, or
- carrying out your instructions (who the law calls your agent)

does something that is unlawful discrimination, **harassment** or **victimisation**, you can be held legally responsible for what they have done.

This part of the guide explains:

- When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.
- How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible.
- How you can make sure workers employed by you and your agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.
- When workers employed by you or your agents may be personally liable.
- What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law.
- What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law.
- What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation.

### When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation

If you use other people to provide services or carry out public functions for you, you are legally responsible for acts of discrimination, harassment and victimisation carried out by **workers** employed by you in the course of their employment.

You are also legally responsible as the 'principal' for the acts of your **agents** done with your authority. Your agent is someone you have instructed to do something on your behalf, but who is not a worker employed by you, even if you do not have a formal contract with them.

As long as:

- your worker was acting in the course of their employment – in other words, while they were doing their job, or
- your agent was acting within the general scope of your authority – in other words, while they were carrying out your instructions

it does not matter whether or not you:

- knew about, or
- approved of

what your worker or agent did.

For example:

- A shop assistant bars someone they know to be gay from the shop where they work because they are prejudiced against gay people. The person who has been barred can bring a case in court for unlawful discrimination because of sexual orientation against both the shop assistant and the person or company that owns the shop.
- A community organisation hires a consultant to devise a new plan for how the organisation delivers its services. The consultant acts on behalf of the organisation and in its name, both when dealing with internal staff and when dealing with external organisations. The effect of the consultant's plan is to stop some people with a particular protected characteristic accessing its services. A service user with that characteristic complains of unlawful **indirect discrimination**, saying that the new approach has a worse impact on them and other people who share the protected characteristic. The organisation is unable to **objectively justify** the approach. The consultant who made the decision which has resulted in indirect discrimination would be liable, as would the principal (in this case the organisation), which would be liable for what their agent (the consultant) has done.

However, you will not be held legally responsible if you can show that:

- you took **all reasonable steps** to prevent a worker employed by you acting unlawfully.
- an agent acted outside the scope of your authority (in other words, that they did something so different from what you asked them to do that they could no longer be thought of as acting on your behalf).

## How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible

You can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible for the behaviour of the people who work for you if you tell them how to behave so that they avoid unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

This does not just apply to situations where you and your staff are dealing face-to-face with other people when you are delivering your services, but also to how you plan what happens.

When you or your workers or agents are planning what happens to people you are delivering your services to, you need to make sure that your decisions, rules or ways of doing things do not cause:

- **direct discrimination**, or
- **indirect discrimination** that you cannot **objectively justify**, or
- **discrimination arising from disability** that you cannot **objectively justify**, or
- **harassment**

and that you have made reasonable adjustments for disabled people, which you can read more about in Chapter 4.

It is therefore important to make sure that your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.



# How you can make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing

Tell your workers and agents what equality law says about how they must and must not behave while they are working for you.

Below are some examples of reasonable steps you can take to prevent unlawful discrimination or harassment happening in your workplace:

- Telling your workers and agents about discrimination and harassment and that it is not acceptable when they start working for you – and checking from time to time that they remember what you told them, for example, by seeing if/how it has made a difference to how they behave. This could be a very simple checklist you talk them through, or you could give them this guide, or you could arrange for them to have **equality training**.
- Writing down the standards of behaviour you expect in an **equality policy**.
- Including a requirement about behaving in line with equality law in every worker's **terms of employment** or other contract, and making it clear that breaches of equality law will be treated as disciplinary matters or breaches of contract.

You can read more about equality training and equality policies in the Equality and Human Rights Commission guide *Good equality practice for employers: equality policies, equality training and monitoring*.

## Using written terms of employment for employees

Employment law says you must, as an employer, give every **employee** a written statement of the main terms of their employment. You could include a sentence in these written terms that tells the person working for you that they must meet the requirements of equality law, making it clear that a failure to do so will be a disciplinary offence.

Obviously, if you do this, it is important that you also tell the employee what it means. You could use an equality policy to do this, or you could just discuss it with them, or you could give them this guide to read. But it is important that they are clear on what equality law says they must and must not do, or you may be held legally responsible for what they do.

Remember, if the employee is a disabled person, it may be a reasonable adjustment to give them the information in a way that they can understand.

If you receive a complaint claiming unlawful discrimination in relation to your services, you can use the written terms to show that you have taken a reasonable step to prevent unlawful discrimination and harassment occurring. However, you will have to do more than this to actively prevent discrimination.

If someone does complain, you should investigate what has taken place and, if appropriate, you may need to discipline the person who has unlawfully discriminated against or harassed someone else, give them an informal or formal warning, provide training or even dismiss them; the action you take will obviously vary according to the nature of the breach and how serious it was.

If you do find that a worker employed by you has unlawfully discriminated against a service user, then look again at what you are telling your staff to make sure they know what equality law means for how they behave towards the people they are working with.

You can read more about what to do if someone says they've been discriminated against at in Chapter 5.

### Good practice tip for how you and your staff should behave

Ideally, you want anyone who works for you to treat everyone they come across with dignity and respect, including customers, clients or service users, members, associate members or guests. This will help you provide a good service (not just without discriminating but more generally).

If your staff do unlawfully discriminate against people using your services, your reputation may suffer, even if the person on the receiving end does not bring a legal case against you.

## When your workers or agents may be personally liable

A worker employed by you or your agent may be personally responsible for their own acts of discrimination, harassment or victimisation carried out during their employment or while acting with your authority. This applies where either:

- you are also liable as their employer or principal, or
- you would be responsible but you show that:
  - you took **all reasonable steps** to prevent your worker discriminating against, harassing or victimising someone, or
  - your agent acted outside the scope of your authority.

For example:

- Unknown to their employer, the receptionist in an estate agent refuses to give details of houses for rent to a client with a mental health condition. The estate agent has issued clear instructions to its staff about their obligations under equality law, has provided equality training, and regularly checks that staff are complying with the law. It is likely that the receptionist has acted unlawfully but that their employer will have a defence.

But there is an exception to this. A worker or agent will not be responsible if their employer or principal has told them that there is nothing wrong with what they are doing and the worker or agent reasonably believes this to be true.

It is a criminal offence, punishable by a fine, for an employer or principal to make a false statement which a worker employed by them or their agent relies upon to carry out an unlawful act.

## **What happens if the discrimination is done by a person who is not a worker of yours or your agent**

Usually you will not be responsible for discrimination, harassment or victimisation by someone other than your employee or agent, however, case law indicates that it is possible that they could be found to be legally responsible for failing to take action where you have some degree of control over a situation where there is a continuing course of offensive conduct, but you do not take action to prevent its recurrence even though you are aware of it happening.

## **What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law**

An employer or principal must not instruct, cause or induce a worker employed by them or their agent to discriminate against, harass or victimise another person, or to attempt to do so.

‘Causing’ or ‘inducing’ someone to do something can include situations where someone is made to do something or persuaded to do it, even if they were not directly instructed to do it.

Both:

- the person who receives the instruction or is caused or induced to discriminate against, harass or victimise, and
- the person who is on the receiving end of the discrimination, harassment or victimisation

have a claim against the person giving the instructions if they suffer loss or harm as a result of the instructing or causing or inducing of the discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

This applies whether or not the instruction is actually carried out.

## **What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law**

A person must not help someone else carry out an act which the person helping knows is unlawful under equality law.

However, if the person helping has been told by the person they help that the act is lawful, and they reasonably believe this to be true, the person helping will not be legally responsible.

It is a criminal offence, punishable by a fine, to make a false statement which another person relies on to help to carry out an unlawful act.

## **What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation**

You cannot stop equality law applying to a situation if it does in fact apply. For example, there is no point in making a statement in a contract with a client, customer or service user that equality law does not apply. The statement will not have any legal effect. That is, it will not be possible to enforce or rely on a term in a contract that tries to do this. This is the case even if the other person has stated they have understood the term and/or they have agreed to it.

For example:

A business gives a client a written contract to sign which includes a term saying that they cannot bring a claim under the Equality Act 2010. The business withdraws the service in circumstances which amount to unlawful discrimination. The term in the contract does not stop the client bringing a claim in court.

## 4. The duty to make reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people

Equality law recognises that bringing about equality for disabled people may mean changing the way in which services are delivered, providing extra equipment and/or the removal of **physical barriers**.

This is the **duty to make reasonable adjustments**.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments aims to make sure that a disabled person can use a service as close as it is reasonably possible to get to the standard usually offered to non-disabled people.

When the duty arises, you are under a positive and proactive duty to take steps to remove or prevent these obstacles.

If you are providing **goods**, **facilities** or **services** to the public or a section of the public, or carrying out **public functions**, or running an **association** and you find there are barriers to disabled people in the way you do things, then you must consider making adjustments (in other words, changes). If those adjustments are reasonable for you and your organisation to make, then you must make them.

The duty is 'anticipatory'. This means you cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance (and on an ongoing basis) about what disabled people with a range of **impairments** might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

Many of the adjustments you can make will not be particularly expensive, and you are not required to do more than it is reasonable for you to do. What is reasonable for you to do depends, among other factors, on the size and nature of your organisation and the nature of the goods, facilities or services you provide.

If, however, a disabled person can show that there were barriers you should have identified and **reasonable adjustments** you could have made, they can bring a claim against you in court, and you may be ordered to pay them compensation as well as make the reasonable adjustments.

As well as being something you are required by equality law to do, making reasonable adjustments will help a wider range of people use your services.

Once you have made a reasonable adjustment, don't forget to tell people about it. For example, put up a sign at your premises, include it in information you publish (make sure you provide **alternative formats** if appropriate) and put it on your website. This is not just because it will bring more customers; it is an essential part of meeting the duty. If the adjustment is not reasonably apparent to disabled people, they may still think they cannot use your services and in some circumstances this could mean you have not met the duty.

For example:

An airport provides transfer by electric buggy between check-in and gates for passengers with mobility impairments. Prominent signs at the entrance to the arrival and departure halls and at check-in desks assist disabled passengers in accessing that service. If the notices are not put up, and no one informs disabled passengers who require them that they exist, the adjustment would not be effective. The duty would not be met by the mere fact that they were present in the airport if disabled people who needed them were not made aware that they were available.

The rest of this section looks at the detail of the duty and gives examples of the sorts of adjustments you could make. It looks at:

- The three requirements of the duty
- Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage?
- Working out what needs to change
- What is meant by 'reasonable'
- The continuing duty on organisations
- Who pays for reasonable adjustments?
- When the duty is different
  - Associations
  - Rented premises or premises available to rent
  - Transport

# The three requirements of the duty

The duty contains three requirements that apply in situations where a disabled person would otherwise be placed at a substantial disadvantage compared with people who are not disabled.

- The first requirement involves changing the way things are done (equality law talks about where the disabled service user is put at a substantial disadvantage by a **provision, criterion or practice** of the service provider).
- Does your organisation have rules or ways of doing things, whether written or unwritten that present barriers to disabled people?

A practice may have the effect of excluding disabled people from enjoying access to your services. Or it may create a barrier or hurdle that might put disabled people at a substantial disadvantage to access your services.

It might be reasonable for you to stop the practice completely, or to change it so that it no longer has that effect.

For example:

- A private club has a policy of refusing entry during the evening to male members who do not wear a shirt and tie. A disabled member who wishes to attend in the evening is unable to wear a tie because he has psoriasis (a severe skin complaint) of the face and neck. Unless the club is prepared to change its policy at least for this member, its effect is to exclude the disabled member from the club. This is likely to be an unlawful failure to make a reasonable adjustment.
- A shop receives feedback from a customer with facial scars from severe burns that the ways in which its staff interact with her have made her feel uncomfortable and failed to provide a helpful service. The retailer decides to introduce disability awareness training, with a particular emphasis on issues around disfigurement, to improve the customer service of its staff. This is likely to be a reasonable adjustment to make.



Ask yourself, for example:

- Could you be more flexible about where or how you provide your services? Could you or your staff change a policy, criterion or practice where this is needed to remove a barrier?
- Do you insist on particular forms of communication, such as putting requests in writing? Or particular proof of identity such as a driving licence?

In addition, where you provide information to customers or clients you must take steps to ensure that the information is provided in an accessible format.

- The second requirement involves making changes to overcome barriers created by the **physical features** of your premises, if these are open to the public or a section of the public.

Where a physical feature puts disabled people using a service at substantial disadvantage, you must take reasonable steps to:

- remove the feature
- alter it so that it no longer has that effect
- provide a reasonable means of avoiding the feature, or
- provide a reasonable alternative method of making the service available to disabled people.

It is better for you to look at removing or altering the physical feature or finding a way of avoiding it (such as replacing steps with a ramp or, if it is reasonable for you to do this, a lift) before you look at providing an alternative service. An alternative service may not give disabled people a similar level of service.

Exactly what kind of changes are needed will depend on the kind of barriers your premises present. You need to look at the whole of the premises that are open to the public or a section of the public, and may have to make more than one change.

For example:

- A pub improves the paths in its beer garden so that the outside space can be accessed by disabled customers with a mobility impairment or a visual impairment.
- A small shop paints its doorframe in a contrasting colour to assist customers with a visual impairment.
- A hairdressing salon moves product display stands from just inside its door to create a wider aisle which means that wheelchair users can use its services more easily.

Physical features include: steps, stairways, kerbs, exterior surfaces and paving, parking areas, building entrances and exits (including emergency escape routes), internal and external doors, gates, toilet and washing facilities, public facilities (such as telephones, counters or service desks), lighting and ventilation, lifts and escalators, floor coverings, signs, furniture, and temporary or movable items (such as equipment and display racks).

Physical features also include the size of premises (for example, the size of an airport where a clearly signed short route to departures might enable people with a mobility impairment to use the airport more easily, or of a shopping centre, where wheelchairs, buggies and extra staff to help shoppers find their way around are made available). This is not an exhaustive list.

Sometimes you will need to ask your landlord's permission to alter rented premises. Equality law gives service providers the right to do so even if the lease states that the alteration in question is prevented by the terms of the lease.

The landlord cannot withhold their consent unreasonably although they may put in place a condition, provided that it is reasonable to do so.

If you are not sure if you are allowed to change the physical features at your premises, but you think you need to do this as a reasonable adjustment, then you should get advice. There is a list of organisations who may be able to help you at the end of this guide.

The third requirement involves providing extra aids and services such as providing extra equipment or providing a different, or additional, service (which equality law calls **auxiliary aids** or **auxiliary services**). You must take reasonable steps to provide auxiliary aids or services if this would enable (or make it easier for) disabled people to make use of any of your services.

For example:

- A shop keeps a portable induction loop on its counter so conversations with staff can be heard more easily by disabled people who use hearing aids.
- A club records its handbook onto **audio CD for members with a visual impairment**, and sends out its newsletters by email as an audio file if members ask for this.
- An accountant offers to make a home visit to a client with a mobility impairment when usually clients would come to the accountant's premises.
- A leisure centre has a regular booking by a group of deaf people. The leisure centre makes sure that the members of staff who have had basic training in British Sign Language (BSL) are rostered to work on that day to make sure that the deaf customers get the same level of service that other people would expect.

The kind of equipment or service will depend very much on the individual disabled person and what your organisation does. However you may be able to think in advance about some things that will help particular groups of disabled people.

Technological solutions may be useful in overcoming communication barriers, but sometimes a person offering assistance will be what is needed.

For example:

- Asking a disabled person with a visual impairment if they would like assistance in finding goods in a shop or having information read to them.
- Taking the time to explain services to a disabled person with a learning disability.
- If someone is being asked to make a major decision, providing a disabled person who uses British Sign Language (BSL) with a BSL to English interpreter, if it is reasonable for the organisation to do this.

If you do provide equipment, the equipment must work and be maintained. It is also important that staff know how to use the equipment

The duty is slightly different for associations, in relation to management of premises, and for transport services. These differences are explained at the end of this section of the guide.

## **Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage?**

The question you need to ask yourself is whether:

- the way you do things
- any physical feature of your premises, or
- the absence of an auxiliary aid or service

puts disabled people at a substantial disadvantage compared with people who are not disabled.

Anything that is more than minor or trivial is a substantial disadvantage.

If a substantial disadvantage does exist, then the duty to make reasonable adjustments arises.

The aim of the adjustments you make is to remove the substantial disadvantage.

But you only have to make adjustments that are reasonable for you to make.

## Good practice tips for working out whether disabled people face a substantial disadvantage in using your services

- Local disabled people's groups may be happy to help you work this out. Contact groups representing people with a range of impairments. Explain that you want to make reasonable adjustments, and ask if they can help.
- National organisations of disabled people may also have information available about the impact of different impairments.
- If your organisation is part of a group such as a local chamber of commerce, community and voluntary sector umbrella group or group of local clubs, then you could organise a joint approach and ask them to help you survey several organisations together and share good practice.
- If you belong to a national association, they may produce specialist advice on the sorts of barriers disabled people face in your sector, as well as the changes made by similar organisations to your own.
- You could commission an access audit of premises which the general public have access to.

## Working out what needs to change

If you look at the definition of disability, you will immediately realise that disabled people are a diverse group with different requirements. No single aspect of the way in which you deliver your services will create barriers for all disabled people, or, in most cases, for disabled people generally.

A practice, or a feature of your premises, which is a barrier for people with a particular impairment may present no difficulties for others with a different impairment.

Some barriers may affect some people with the same impairment differently.

For example:

People with a visual impairment who use assistance dogs will be prevented from using services with a 'no dogs' policy, whereas visually impaired people who do not use assistance dogs will not be affected by this policy. The service provider must think about the needs of both groups.

Remember, the duty is a duty to disabled people in general. You must make reasonable adjustments even if you do not know that a particular customer, client, service user or member is a disabled person or even if you believe that you currently have no disabled customers, clients, service users or members.

On the other hand, once you are aware of the requirements of a particular disabled person who uses or seeks to use your services, it might then be reasonable for you to take a particular step to meet these requirements. This is especially so where someone has pointed out the difficulty that they face in accessing services, or has suggested a reasonable solution to that difficulty.

You are not expected to anticipate the needs of every individual who may use their service. You are required to think about and take reasonable steps to overcome features that may create a disadvantage for people with particular kinds of impairments – for example, people with visual impairments hearing impairments, mobility impairments, learning disabilities and mental health conditions.

## What is meant by ‘reasonable’

You only have to do what is reasonable.

When deciding whether an adjustment is reasonable you can consider:

- how effective the change will be in assisting disabled people in general or a particular customer, client, service user or member
- whether it can actually be done
- the cost, and
- your organisation’s resources and size.

Your overall aim should be, as far as possible, to remove any disadvantage faced by disabled people.

You can consider whether an adjustment is practicable. The easier an adjustment is, the more likely it is to be reasonable. However, just because something is difficult doesn’t mean it can’t also be reasonable. You need to balance this against other factors.

If an adjustment costs little or nothing and is not disruptive, it would be reasonable unless some other factor (such as impracticality or lack of effectiveness) made it unreasonable.

Your size and resources are another factor. If an adjustment costs a significant amount, it is more likely to be reasonable for you to make it if you have substantial financial resources. Your organisation’s resources must be looked at across your whole organisation, not just for the branch or section that provides the particular service.

This is an issue which you have to balance against the other factors.

In changing policies, criteria or practices, you do not have to change the basic nature of the service you offer.

For example:

- An association which exists to taste wine does not have to hold soft drink tastings when a member's disability prevents them drinking alcohol.
- Just because some of its treatments may be unsuitable for some disabled people, such as people undergoing chemotherapy for cancer, a beauty salon does not have to stop offering certain treatments altogether.

If, having taken all of the relevant issues into account, you decide that an adjustment is reasonable then you must make it happen.

## The continuing duty on organisations

The duty to make reasonable adjustments is a continuing duty. You should keep the duty and the ways you are meeting the duty under regular review in light of your experience with disabled people wishing to access your services. It is not something that needs simply to be considered once and once only, and then forgotten. What was originally a reasonable step to take might no longer be sufficient, and the provision of further or different adjustments might then have to be considered.

For example:

A large sports complex amends its 'no dogs' policy to allow entry to assistance dogs. It offers assistance dog users a tour of the complex to acquaint them with routes. This is likely to be a reasonable step for it to have to take at this stage. However, the complex then starts building work and this encroaches on paths within the complex, making it difficult for assistance dog users to negotiate their way around. Offering an initial tour is therefore no longer an effective adjustment as it does not make the complex accessible to assistance dog users. The service provider therefore decides to offer assistance dog users appropriate additional assistance from staff while the building work is being undertaken. This is likely to be a reasonable step for the service provider to have to take in the circumstances then existing.

Equally, a step that might previously have been an unreasonable one for a service provider to have to take could subsequently become a reasonable step in light of changed circumstances. For example, technological developments may provide new or better solutions to the problems of inaccessible services.

For example:

A library has a small number of computers for the public to use. When the computers were originally installed, the library investigated the option of incorporating text-to-speech software for people with a visual impairment. It rejected the option because the software was very expensive and not particularly effective. It would not have been a reasonable step for the library to have to take at that stage. The library proposes to replace the computers. It makes enquiries and establishes that text-to-speech software is now efficient and within the library's budget. The library decides to install the software on the replacement computers. This is likely to be a reasonable step for the library to have to take at this time.

## Who pays for reasonable adjustments?

If an adjustment is reasonable, you must pay for it. You are not allowed to ask a disabled person to pay for it, even if you have made it in response to their request and even if it has cost you extra to provide it.

For example:

A guest house has installed an audio-visual fire alarm in one of its guest bedrooms in order to accommodate visitors with a sensory impairment. In order to recover the costs of this installation, the landlady charges disabled guests a higher daily charge for that room, although it is otherwise identical to other bedrooms. This increased charge is unlikely to be within the law.

Even if you charge other people for a service, such as delivering something to their home, if the reason you are providing the service to a disabled person is as a reasonable adjustment, you must not charge the disabled person for it. But if the disabled person is using the service in exactly the same way as other customers, clients, service users or members, then you can charge them the same as you charge other people.

For example:

A wine merchant runs an online shopping service and charges all customers for home delivery. Its customers include disabled people with mobility impairments. Since this online service does not create a substantial disadvantage for disabled people with mobility impairments wishing to use it, home delivery, in these



circumstances, will not be a reasonable adjustment that the wine merchant has to make. Therefore, the wine merchant can charge disabled customers in the same way as other customers for this service.

However, another wine merchant has a shop which is inaccessible to disabled people with mobility impairments. Home delivery in these circumstances might be a reasonable adjustment for the wine merchant to have to make for these customers. The wine merchant could not then charge such customers for home delivery, even though it charges other customers for home delivery.

## When the duty is different

### *Associations*

The aim of reasonable adjustments is to make sure that disabled people are able to join an association or use its services as far as is reasonably possible to the same standard usually offered to non-disabled people.

An association does not just have to think about reasonable adjustments for disabled people who are already members, associate members or guests, but also to disabled people who are:

- seeking or might wish to become members, or
- are likely to become guests.

This means the association must think in advance about what disabled people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

If it is the **physical features** of a building the association occupies or is using that put disabled people at a substantial disadvantage, the association must either:

- make reasonable adjustments to avoid the disadvantage, or
- find a reasonable alternative way of providing members, associate members and guests (and prospective members and guests) with the same access to membership and to its services.

Sometimes a reasonable adjustment may involve providing disabled people with an alternative way of using the service, which involves some level of inconvenience or segregation. However, the best kind of reasonable adjustment is one which enables disabled people to access the service in much the same way as non-disabled people. Indeed, if there is an adjustment which can reasonably be made which avoids segregation or inconvenience, then an adjustment which entails segregation or inconvenience may not be considered a reasonable adjustment at all.

Where meetings take place in a member's or associate member's home, then reasonable adjustments do not have to be made to **physical features** to make it accessible for a member who is a disabled person and for whom the physical features of the meeting place present a barrier to their attending the meeting.

But it may be a reasonable adjustment to hold the meeting at an **accessible venue**.

For example:

A cycling club has 30 members and no premises of its own. Instead members meet in the leader's house once a year for their AGM. This has no suitable access for a disabled member of the club, an amputee who uses a wheelchair. (The member uses a specially adapted tandem when cycling.) As a reasonable adjustment, the club decides to hold its meetings in a local sports hall which has suitable access.

Even if this is not a reasonable adjustment taking into account all the circumstances of the association, such as its size and resources, the association may want to consider whether as a matter of good practice it should change where it meets to an accessible venue.

## ***Rented premises or premises available to rent***

The duty to make reasonable adjustments applies to landlords and managers of rented premises or premises which are available to rent. This may include a landlord, a letting agency, a property management company, a management or residents' committee of a block of flats, and any other person who, in practice, has control over how the premises are let or managed. In this guide, these people are referred to as 'controllers of the premises'.

The letting of both commercial premises and houses for domestic use (subject to some exceptions) are covered. Letting includes sub-letting, and the granting of contractual licences to occupy premises (as opposed to an interest in the property which is granted by a lease). However, it does not include private sales (called **private disposals** in the Act) provided that an estate agent has not been used and no advert published. Similarly, it does not apply if the landlord is simply renting a room or rooms in a house with room for six people or less where the landlord or a relative or partner are still living. This is called the **small premises** exemption.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments in relation to the letting of premises is different from the usual duty to make reasonable adjustments relating to services.

First, it is not anticipatory. The duty only arises if the controller of the premises is requested to make an adjustment by a person to whom the premises are let or who wishes to rent the premises, or someone on their behalf. The request may not necessarily be made formally and the landlord should presume that they are under an obligation to make a reasonable adjustment if it is reasonable to assume that a request has been made.

For example:

A landlord is speaking to a prospective tenant on the telephone to arrange a meeting to sign a tenancy agreement. During the conversation, the tenant explains that they are visually impaired and find the print in the tenancy agreement too small. The tenant is identifying an impairment and it is likely that it would be reasonable to regard this as being a request for an auxiliary aid, such as a tenancy agreement in an alternative format. The tenant does not have to request a particular format for the landlord to have to consider an adjustment.

Second, there are just two requirements. These are:

- Providing auxiliary aids and services.
- Changing provisions, criteria or practices, including (once premises have been let) changing a term of the letting. For example, a 'no dogs' term in a lease entered into by a disabled person who uses an assistance dog.

There is no requirement to make any changes which would consist of or include the removal or alteration of a physical feature, which includes:

- any feature arising from the design or construction of a building
- any feature of any approach to, exit from or access to a building
- any fixtures or fittings in or on premises
- any other physical element or quality.

Physical features do not include furniture, furnishings, materials, equipment or other personal property.

Changes are unlikely to be treated as consisting of or including the alteration of a physical feature where they have only an incidental effect on a physical feature.

For example:

Attaching something to a physical feature, such as a wall, with a screw is unlikely to amount to an alteration of the physical feature. However, something more significant, such as installing a concrete ramp between a step and a path, is likely to amount to an alteration of a physical feature.

Things like the replacement or provision of any signs or notices, the replacement of any taps or door handles, the replacement, provision or adaptation of any doorbell or door entry system, changes to the colour of any surface (such as a wall or a door, for example)

do not count as physical features, so the duty to make reasonable adjustments could require changes to them.

The same tests apply when deciding if an adjustment is a reasonable adjustment:

- how effective the change will be in assisting the tenant or family member who needs the adjustment
- whether it can actually be done or not
- the cost
- the controller's resources and size.

Although a controller of premises is not required to alter physical features, there are specific rules about when a controller of premises must agree to tenants themselves making alterations to physical features of rented homes.

In future, there may also be specific rules about the process to be followed when requests are made for alterations to shared areas or 'common parts' of buildings and this guidance will be updated to reflect these changes.

## ***Transport services***

A transport provider's duty to make reasonable adjustments so that disabled people can use services applies to the way vehicles are operated, for example, by requiring train or station staff to assist a person with a mobility impairment in getting on and off a train, or by a bus driver telling a visually impaired person when they have reached their stop. It may require a service to be provided in a different way.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments also applies to adding auxiliary aids or equipment to existing vehicles, such as audio-visual passenger information, priority seating and contrasting handrails; these may be reasonable adjustments and, if so, the transport provider must provide them.

However, changes do not have to be made to physical features of existing land vehicles, except for some rental vehicles.

But some types of land vehicle must be replaced by a certain date with new vehicles, which do provide level access and a range of other equipment to make sure that they can be used by disabled people with a range of impairments.

Special provisions apply in relation to disability discrimination and air travel.

## 5. What to do if someone says they've been discriminated against

If a **customer, client, service user, member, associate member** or **guest** believes that you (or, if you have anyone else working for you, your **worker** or **agent**) have **unlawfully discriminated** against them, **harassed** or **victimised** them against equality law in relation to the **goods, facilities** or **services**, or **public functions** you provide, they may:

- Complain directly to you.
- Use someone else to help sort the situation out (alternative dispute resolution).
- Make a claim in court.

These are not alternatives, since the person complaining can still make a claim in court even if they first complained to you and/or used someone else to sort it out.

This part of this guide:

- looks at ways you can sort out the situation if they complain directly to you
- tells you where to find information about alternative dispute resolution (you can suggest this without waiting for the person complaining to suggest it)
- explains the questions procedure, which someone can use to find out more information from you if they think they may have been unlawfully discriminated against, harassed or victimised
- explains some key points about court procedures in discrimination cases relating to claims outside the workplace:
  - where claims are brought
  - time limits for bringing a claim
  - the standard and burden of proof
  - what the court can order you to do
- tells you where to find out more about defending a court case.

## If someone complains directly to you

If a customer, client, service user, member, associate or guest contacts you to say they have been discriminated against, you will obviously want to find out as much as possible about what has happened.

Consider the information given in this guide.

You will need to make a realistic assessment about whether what you and/or your workers and/or agents have done (or failed to do) amounts to unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

You may need to conduct an investigation into the complaint in order to form a view.

If you are an **employer**, and you think a complaint might need you to take disciplinary action against a worker employed by you, the Arbitration and Conciliation Service (Acas) publish guidance on discipline and grievance procedures.

If you feel you need to get more advice on whether what has happened was against equality law, you will find information on places where you can get help see the Further information and advice section.

If you decide that the person who complained was unlawfully discriminated against, harassed or victimised, you then need to decide the best way to solve the complaint.

If, after investigating what has happened, you decide:

- no unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation took place, or
- that you are not responsible for what has happened then tell the person who has complained.

You do not have to explain why you came to your conclusion, but it may help if you do. For example, they may decide that it is not worth taking their claim to court.

### Good practice tips on solving complaints

Defending a claim in court can be lengthy, expensive and draining, and it can have a damaging impact on the reputation of your organisation.

It is likely to be in everyone's interest to try to put things right before a claim is made to a court.

If you need to apologise to the person who has complained for the way they were treated or the way something was done, then do this.

If you need to change the way you do things so the same thing does not happen again, then do this.

Also:

- consider **equality training** for yourself and/or people working for you
- think about having an **equality policy**.

## Alternative dispute resolution

The first part of this section assumed you would do all the investigating and negotiating yourself. If you want to get help in sorting out a complaint about discrimination, you could try to get the person complaining to agree to what is usually called 'alternative dispute resolution' or ADR. ADR involves finding a way of sorting out the complaint without a formal court hearing. ADR techniques include mediation and conciliation.

You can find out more about ADR, whether any of the options might be suitable in your situation, what you have to do, and how much it might cost from the:

- **Equality Advisory Support Service (EASS)** (see *Further sources of information and advice* section).
- Scottish Government publication *Resolving Disputes Without Going To Court* if you are in Scotland).

For some sorts of cases mediation services are available through the courts service, and these can be used instead of waiting for a case to be heard by a judge. Mediation has the advantage of generally reducing cost and may successfully settle a claim without the inconvenience of a trial. You can find information about mediation services, including how to find mediators registered with the Civil Mediation Council for England and Wales here: <http://www.justice.gov.uk/courts/mediation> and for Scotland here: <http://www.scottishmediation.org.uk/>

## *The questions procedure*

It is good practice for someone who thinks that they may have experienced unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation under equality law to seek relevant information before issuing a formal claim. This can help them to decide if they have a valid claim or not.

How they can do this will depend on whether or not the claim is about something that happened before 6 April 2014.

### **Claims about events which happened before 6 April 2014**

If the claim is about something that happened before 6 April 2014, there is a set procedure which can be used to obtain information from you. It includes a set form called 'the questionnaire' or 'questions procedure' available at:

<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/discrimination-and-other-prohibited-conduct-complaints-questionnaire>

The form does not need to be used, provided the specified questions are adopted.

If you receive questions under this procedure, you are not legally required to reply or to answer the questions, but it may harm your case if you do not.

If you don't respond to the questionnaire within eight weeks of it being sent, the court can take that into account when making its judgment. The court can also take into account answers which are evasive or unclear.

There is an exception to this. The court cannot take the failure to answer into account if a person or organisation states that to give an answer could prejudice criminal proceedings and if it is reasonable to claim that it would. Most of the time, breaking equality law only leads to a claim in a civil court. Occasionally, breaking equality law can be punished by the criminal courts. In that situation, the person or organisation may be able to refuse to answer the questions if in answering they might incriminate themselves and if it is reasonable for them not to answer. If you think this might apply to you, you should get legal advice on what to do.

### **Claims about events which happened on or after 6 April 2014**

The questions procedure and the questionnaire form were abolished on 6 April 2014. For claims about events which took place on or after that date it will remain good practice for anyone who thinks that they may have experienced unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation under equality law to seek relevant information before issuing a formal claim.

The Government Equalities Office has issued a good practice guide to help individuals ask the most relevant and helpful questions and to assist you in responding to their questions. This can be found at:



<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/asking-and-responding-to-questions-of-discrimination-in-the-provision-of-goods-and-services-and-public-functions>.

That guidance makes it clear that a service provider should treat any such questions seriously and promptly and not ignore them. The questions and answers can form part of the evidence in a case brought under the Equality Act 2010.

## ***Key points about discrimination cases outside the workplace***

The key points this guide explains are:

- where claims are brought
- time limits for bringing a claim
- the standard and burden of proof
- what the court can order you to do.

## ***Where claims are brought***

If you are:

- a service provider, or
- carrying out public functions, or
- an association, including private clubs and political parties, or
- a premises provider, whether you provide housing or commercial premises, or
- in some circumstances, an education provider

then any claim against you that someone has been discriminated against (including that there has been a failure to make reasonable adjustments), harassed, or victimised on the basis of a **protected characteristic** will be brought against you in the County Court in England and Wales and in the Sheriff Court in Scotland.

If you are a **public authority**, a person who wishes to claim discrimination may also bring a claim for **judicial review** in the High Court in England and Wales or the Court of Session in Scotland. Different procedures and time limits apply to bringing such claims.

## *Time limits for bringing a claim*

If someone wants to bring a claim of unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation relating to equality law, they must bring it within six months of the act that they are complaining about.

If the person is complaining about behaviour over a period of time, then in certain circumstances the six months begins at the end of the period.

If the person is complaining about a failure to do something, for example, a failure to make **reasonable adjustments**, then the six months begins when the decision was made not to do it. If there is no solid evidence of a decision, then the decision is assumed to have been made either:

- when the person who failed to do the thing does something else which shows they don't intend to do it, or
- at the end of the time when they might reasonably have been expected to do the thing.

For example

A business sells goods over the internet. It is having its website redesigned. It looks into having its website made more accessible to disabled people and decides that doing this is a reasonable adjustment. The new website claims to be fully accessible. However, when the new website goes live, it turns out not to be any more accessible than the old one. The business does not do anything about this. A disabled person writes to the organisation and asks them to bring their website up to the standard they are claiming for it. The organisation does nothing. The time limit for bringing a claim is measured from the time when they might reasonably be expected to have made improvements to the website.

A court can hear a claim if it is brought outside this time limit if the court thinks that it would be 'just and equitable' (fair to both sides) for it to do this.

## *The standard and burden of proof*

The standard of proof in discrimination cases is the usual one in civil (non-criminal) cases. Each side must try to prove the facts of their case are true on the balance of probabilities, in other words, that it is more likely than not in the view of the court or tribunal that their version of events is true.

If someone is claiming unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation against you, then the burden of proof begins with them. They must prove enough facts from which the court can decide, in the absence of any other explanation, that the discrimination, harassment or victimisation has taken place.

Once they have done this, then, in the absence of any other explanation, the burden shifts onto you to show that you or someone whose actions or omissions you were responsible for did not discriminate, harass or victimise the person making the claim.

## *What the court can order you to do*

What the court can order if you lose your case is called 'a remedy'.

County Courts and Sheriff Courts hearing discrimination claims can grant any remedy that the High Court in England or Wales or the Court of Session in Scotland can grant for a civil wrong or in a claim for judicial review.

The main remedies available are:

- Damages (including compensation for injuries to feelings).
- An injunction in England or Wales or an interdict in Scotland) – this is an order made by the court to stop a person or organisation from acting in an unlawful way. Sometimes in England and Wales an injunction can be mandatory; that is, you have to do something (for example, you have to change a policy or make a reasonable adjustment). In Scotland an order for specific implement works in the same way.
- A declaration in England or Wales or a declarator in Scotland – this is a statement by the court which says that someone has been discriminated against.

In cases of **indirect discrimination**, if you can prove that you did not intend what you did to be discriminatory, the court must consider all of the remedies before looking at damages.

The court can also order you to pay the legal costs and expenses of the person bringing the claim. You would have to pay these on top of your own legal costs and expenses.

## More information about defending a court case

You can find out more about what to do if someone brings a court case against you from:

- In England and Wales: Her Majesty's Courts Service see the Further information and advice *section* for details.
- In Scotland: Scottish Courts Service see the Further information and advice section for details.

## 6. Further sources of information and advice

### General advice and information

#### Equality and Human Rights Commission

The Equality and Human Rights Commission is the independent advocate for equality and human rights in Britain. It aims to reduce inequality, eliminate discrimination, strengthen good relations between people, and promote and protect human rights. The Equality and Human Rights Commission helplines advise both individuals and organisations such as employers and service providers.

**Website:** [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com)

#### England

##### Manchester

Arndale House, The Arndale Centre,  
Manchester, M4 3AQ  
Telephone: 0161 829 8100  
Fax: 0161 829 8110  
Email: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

##### London

Fleetbank House,  
2-6 Salisbury Square,  
London EC4Y 8JX  
Telephone: 020 7832 7800  
Fax: 020 7832 7801  
Email: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

**Wales** (welcomes correspondence in Welsh and in English)

##### Cardiff

Ground Floor, 1 Caspian Point,  
Caspian Way,  
Cardiff Bay CF10 4DQ

Telephone: 02920 447710  
Text-phone: 02920 447713  
Fax: 02920 447712  
Email: [wales@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:wales@equalityhumanrights.com)

## **Scotland**

### **Glasgow**

151 West George Street,  
Glasgow G2 2JJ  
Telephone: 0141 228 5910  
Fax: 0141 228 5912  
Email: [scotland@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:scotland@equalityhumanrights.com)

## **Directgov**

Directgov is the UK government's digital service for people in England and Wales. It delivers information and practical advice about public services, bringing them all together in one place.

Website: [www.direct.gov.uk](http://www.direct.gov.uk)

## **Government Equalities Office (GEO)**

The GEO is the Government department responsible for equalities legislation and policy in the UK.

Website: [www.equalities.gov.uk](http://www.equalities.gov.uk)

# **Business advice and information**

## **British Chambers of Commerce (BCC)**

The BCC is the national body for a network of accredited Chambers of Commerce across the UK; each Chamber provides representation, services, information and guidance to its members.

Website: [www.britishchambers.org.uk](http://www.britishchambers.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7654 5800

Fax: 020 7000 1373

Email: [info@britishchambers.org.uk](mailto:info@britishchambers.org.uk)

### **British Retail Consortium (BRC)**

The BRC is a trade association representing a broad range of retailers. It provides advice and information for its members.

Website: [www.brc.org.uk](http://www.brc.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7854 8900

Fax: 020 7854 8901

### **EEF**

EEF is a membership organisation which provides business services to help members manage people, processes, environment and more, so that members can meet their regulatory commitments.

Website: [www.eef.org.uk](http://www.eef.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7222 7777

Fax: 020 7222 2782

### **Federation of Small Businesses (FSB)**

The FSB works to protect, promote, and further the interests of the self-employed and small business sector. It provides a range of member services.

Website: [www.fsb.org.uk](http://www.fsb.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 2020 888

Fax: 01253 348 046

## **Charities and voluntary organisations**

### **Charity Commission for England and Wales**

The Charity Commission registers and regulates charities in England and Wales. It offers them advice and provides a wide range of services and guidance to help them run as effectively as possible.

Website: [www.charity-commission.gov.uk](http://www.charity-commission.gov.uk)

Telephone: 0845 300 0218

Textphone: 0845 300 0219

### **National Council for Voluntary Organisations (NCVO)**

The NCVO provides information, advice and support to others working in or with the voluntary sector in England.

Website: [www.ncvo-vol.org.uk](http://www.ncvo-vol.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7713 6161

### **Office of the Scottish Charity Regulator (OSCR)**

The OSCR is the independent regulator and registrar for Scottish charities. It is a Non-Ministerial Department and forms part of the Scottish Administration.

Website: [www.oscr.org.uk](http://www.oscr.org.uk)

Telephone: 01382 220446

Fax: 01382 220314

Email: [info@oscr.org.uk](mailto:info@oscr.org.uk)

### **Scottish Council for Voluntary Organisations (SCVO)**

The SCVO is the national body representing the voluntary sector in Scotland and provides information, advice and support to members.

Website: [www.scvo.org.uk](http://www.scvo.org.uk)

Telephone: 0131 474 8000

Email: [enquiries@scvo.org.uk](mailto:enquiries@scvo.org.uk)

### **Voice 4 Change England**

Voice4Change England is a national policy body dedicated to strengthening the ethnic minority Third Sector. It provides a co-ordinated policy voice for ethnic minority groups and organisations and supports them to thrive.

Website: [www.voice4change-england.co.uk](http://www.voice4change-england.co.uk)

Telephone: 020 7697 4240

### **Wales Council for Voluntary Action (WCVA)**

The WCVA is the national body representing the voluntary sector in Wales and provides information, advice and support to members.

Website: [www.wcva.org.uk](http://www.wcva.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 2888 329

SMS: 07797 805628

Email: [help@wcva.org.uk](mailto:help@wcva.org.uk)



## Advice on specific issues

### **Age UK**

Age UK aims to improve later life for everyone by providing information and advice, campaigns, products, training and research.

Website: [www.ageuk.org.uk](http://www.ageuk.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 169 6565

Email: [contact@ageuk.org.uk](mailto:contact@ageuk.org.uk)

### **Carers Trust**

The Princess Royal Trust for Carers is the largest provider of comprehensive carers' support services in the UK through its unique network of 144 independently managed Carers' Centres, 85 young carers' services and interactive websites. The Trust currently provides quality information, advice and support services to over 400,000 carers, including approximately 25,000 young carers.

Website: [www.carers.org](http://www.carers.org); [www.youngcarers.net](http://www.youngcarers.net)

Telephone: 0844 800 4361

Fax: 0844 800 4362

Email: [info@carers.org](mailto:info@carers.org)

### **Carers UK**

The voice of carers. Carers provide unpaid care by looking after an ill, frail or disabled family member, friend or partner.

England

Website: [www.carersuk.org](http://www.carersuk.org)

Telephone: 0808 808 7777 (Mon to Fri, from 10am until 4pm)

Email: [advice@carersuk.org](mailto:advice@carersuk.org)

### **Centre for Accessible Environments (CAE):**

CAE is a registered charity providing information and training on the accessibility of the built environment for disabled people.

Website: [www.cae.org.uk](http://www.cae.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7822 8232

Email: [info@cae.org.uk](mailto:info@cae.org.uk)

## **ChildLine**

ChildLine is the UK's free, confidential helpline dedicated to children and young people. Advice can also be found on its website.

Website: [www.childline.org.uk](http://www.childline.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 1111

## **The Children's Legal Centre (CLC)**

The CLC provides legal advice, information and representation for children and young people.

Website: [www.childrenslegalcentre.com](http://www.childrenslegalcentre.com)

Telephone: 08088 020 008 (Mon-Fri 8am-8pm)

## **Children's Rights Alliance England (CRAE)**

CRAE provides free legal information and advice, raises awareness of children's human rights, and undertakes research about children's access to their rights.

Website: [www.crae.org.uk](http://www.crae.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7278 8222

Advice line (Tues to Thurs 3.30-5.30pm): 0800 32 88 759

Email: [info@crae.org.uk](mailto:info@crae.org.uk)

Advice email: [advice@crae.org.uk](mailto:advice@crae.org.uk)

## **Disability Law Service (DLS)**

The DLS is a national charity providing information and advice to disabled and Deaf people. It covers a wide range of topics including discrimination, consumer issues, education and employment.

Website: [www.dls.org.uk](http://www.dls.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7791 9800

Minicom: 020 7791 9801

## **Mencap**

Mencap is the leading UK charity for people with a learning disability and their families. It provides a range of services including advice and information.

Website: [www.mencap.org.uk](http://www.mencap.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 808 1111

Fax: 020 7608 3254

Email: [information@mencap.org.uk](mailto:information@mencap.org.uk)

## **Mind**

Mind is the leading mental health charity for England and Wales. It provides information to help promote understanding of mental health and campaigns to promote and protect good mental health. It has an info-line and a legal services line, and also provides online advice.

Website: [www.mind.org.uk](http://www.mind.org.uk)

Infoline: 0300 1233 393

Legal Advice Service: 0845 2259393

Email: [legal@mind.org.uk](mailto:legal@mind.org.uk)

## **Disability Rights UK**

RADAR is a national umbrella organisation with around 500 member groups. It campaigns for equal rights for disabled people and gives information and advice on disability issues.

Website: [www.disabilityrightsuk.org](http://www.disabilityrightsuk.org)

Telephone: 020 7250 3222

Fax: 020 7247 8765

Email: [enquiries@disabilityrightsuk.org](mailto:enquiries@disabilityrightsuk.org)

## **Rethink**

Rethink helps over 48,000 people every year through its services, support groups and by providing information on mental health conditions.

Website: [www.rethink.org](http://www.rethink.org)

Telephone: 0300 5000 927

(10:00 to 13:00 Monday–Friday)

Email: [advice@rethink.org](mailto:advice@rethink.org)

## **Royal National Institute for the Blind (RNIB)**

The RNIB is the UK's leading charity offering information, support and advice to over two million people with sight loss.

Website: [www.rnib.org.uk](http://www.rnib.org.uk)

Helpline: 0303 123 9999

Email: [helpline@rnib.org.uk](mailto:helpline@rnib.org.uk)

## **Action on hearing loss**

Action on hearing loss (previously RNID) offers a range of services for Deaf and hard of hearing people and provides information and support on all aspects of deafness, hearing loss and tinnitus.

Website: [www.actiononhearingloss.org.uk](http://www.actiononhearingloss.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 808 0123  
Textphone: 0808 808 9000  
Email: [informationline@hearingloss.org.uk](mailto:informationline@hearingloss.org.uk)  
[tinnitushelpline@hearingloss.org.uk](mailto:tinnitushelpline@hearingloss.org.uk)

## **SCOPE**

Scope is the leading UK disability charity for children and adults with cerebral palsy. It provides information, help, support and advice on disability issues.

Website: [www.scope.org.uk](http://www.scope.org.uk)  
Helpline: 0808 800 3333 (9am and 5pm on weekdays)  
Email: [response@scope.org.uk](mailto:response@scope.org.uk)

## **Terrence Higgins Trust**

Terrence Higgins Trust is the leading and largest HIV and sexual health charity in the UK. It offers a range of services including advice and information for people affected by HIV.

Website: [www.tht.org.uk](http://www.tht.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0808 802 1221 (Mon to Fri, 9.30am to 5.30pm)  
Fax: 020 7812 1601  
Email: [info@tht.org.uk](mailto:info@tht.org.uk)

## **Gingerbread**

Gingerbread is a national and local charity working for, and with, single parent families, to improve their lives. It lobbies and campaigns to raise awareness and provides advice and information for single parents.

Website: [www.gingerbread.org.uk](http://www.gingerbread.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0808 802 0925 (single parent helpline)  
Email: [info@gingerbread.org.uk](mailto:info@gingerbread.org.uk)

## **Maternity Action**

Maternity Action works to end inequality and promote the health and wellbeing of all pregnant women, their partners and children from before conception through to the child's early years. It provides information sheets but cannot provide advice on individual cases.

Website: [www.maternityaction.org.uk](http://www.maternityaction.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0845 600 8533

## **Rights of Women (RoW)**

RoW is a UK voluntary organisation working to attain justice and equality by informing, educating and empowering women on their legal rights. It provides free, confidential advice on a range of issues.

Website: <http://www.rightsofwomen.org.uk>

Telephone:

Textphone: 020 7490 2562

### **Women's Aid**

Women's Aid is the key national charity working to end domestic violence against women and children. It supports a network of over 500 domestic and sexual violence services across the UK and provides a free 24-hour helpline.

Website: [www.womensaid.org.uk](http://www.womensaid.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 2000 247

Email: [info@womensaid.org.uk](mailto:info@womensaid.org.uk)

Helpline: [helpline@womensaid.org.uk](mailto:helpline@womensaid.org.uk)

### **Inter Faith Network**

The Inter Faith Network for the UK promotes good relations between people of different faiths. It has a list of contact details for faith groups and organisations across the UK.

Website: [www.interfaith.org.uk](http://www.interfaith.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7730 0410

### **Gender Identity Research and Education Society (GIRES)**

GIRES provides a wide range of information and training for Trans people, their families and professionals who care for them.

Website: [www.gires.org.uk](http://www.gires.org.uk)

Telephone: 01372 801 554

Fax: 01372 272 297

Email: [info@gires.org.uk](mailto:info@gires.org.uk)

### **The Gender Trust**

The Gender Trust is the UK's largest charity working to support transsexual, gender dysphoric and transgender people or those who are affected by gender identity issues. It has a helpline and provides training and information for employers and organisations.

Website: [www.gendertrust.org.uk](http://www.gendertrust.org.uk)

Telephone: 01527 894 838

Email: [info@gendertrust.org.uk](mailto:info@gendertrust.org.uk)

### **Press for Change (PfC)**

PfC is a political lobbying and educational organisation. It campaigns to achieve equality and human rights for all Trans people in the UK through legislation and social change. It provides legal advice, training and consultancy for employers and organisations as well as undertaking commissioned research.

Website: [www.pfc.org.uk](http://www.pfc.org.uk)

Telephone: 08448 708165 Email: [office@pfc.org.uk](mailto:office@pfc.org.uk)

### **The Albert Kennedy Trust**

The Albert Kennedy Trust provides information and support to lesbian, gay, bisexual and trans homeless young people.

Website: [www.akt.org.uk](http://www.akt.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7831 6562 (London)

Telephone: 0161 228 3308 (Manchester)

Telephone: 0191 281 0099 (Newcastle-upon-Tyne)

Email: [contact@akt.org.uk](mailto:contact@akt.org.uk)

### **Equality Network**

The Equality Network works for lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender equality and human rights in Scotland. It provides information, and carries out campaigning and policy work.

Website: [www.equality-network.org](http://www.equality-network.org)

Telephone: 0131 467 6039

Fax: 0131 476 9006

Email: [en@equality-network.org](mailto:en@equality-network.org)

### **Galop**

Galop works to prevent and challenge homophobic and transphobic hate crime in Greater London. It aims to reduce crimes against lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender people, and campaigns for an improved criminal justice system.

Website: [www.galop.org.uk](http://www.galop.org.uk)

Helpline: 020 7704 2040

Fax: 020 7704 6707

Email: [info@galop.org.uk](mailto:info@galop.org.uk)

### **The Lesbian and Gay Foundation (LGF)**

The LGF is a North-West based charity working to support lesbian, gay and bisexual people. It provides advice and information, counselling, and support groups.

Website: [www.lgf.org.uk](http://www.lgf.org.uk)

Telephone: 0845 3 30 30 30

Fax: 0161 235 8036

Email: [info@lgf.org.uk](mailto:info@lgf.org.uk)

## **Stonewall**

Stonewall is the UK's leading lesbian, gay and bisexual charity and carries out campaigning, lobbying and research work as well as providing a free information service for individuals, organisations and employers.

Website: [www.stonewall.org.uk](http://www.stonewall.org.uk)

Telephone: 08000 50 20 20

Email: [info@stonewall.org.uk](mailto:info@stonewall.org.uk)

## 7. Glossary

<b>accessible venue</b>	A building designed and/or altered to ensure that people, including disabled people, can enter and move round freely and access its events and facilities.
<b>Act</b>	A law or piece of legislation passed by both Houses of Parliament and agreed to by the Crown, which then becomes part of statutory law (ie is <i>enacted</i> ).
<b>age</b>	This refers to a person belonging to a particular age group, which can mean people of the same age (e.g. 32-year-olds) or range of ages (e.g. 18–30-year-olds, or people over 50).
<b>agent</b>	A person who has authority to act on behalf of another ('the principal') but who is not an <b>employee</b> or <b>worker</b> employed by the employer.
<b>alternative format</b>	Media formats which are accessible to disabled people with specific impairments, for example Braille, audio description, subtitles and Easy Read.
<b>anticipatory duty</b>	For service providers, the duty to make reasonable adjustments is anticipatory; within reason, it is owed to all potential disabled customers and not just to those who are known to the service provider.
<b>associate members</b>	A person who has access to some or all of an association's benefits, facilities and services because they are a member of another associated private club.
<b>associated with</b>	This is used in a situation where the reason a service user is discriminated against is not because they have a particular protected characteristic, but because they are 'associated with' another person who has that protected characteristic; for example, the other person is their friend or relative. For example, a golf club bars a person from membership because they have a disabled child. This is sometimes referred to as discrimination 'by association'.
<b>association</b>	An association of people which has at least 25 members, where admission to membership is regulated and involves a process of selection.



<b>auxiliary aid</b>	Usually a special piece of equipment to improve accessibility.
<b>auxiliary service</b>	A service to improve access to something often involving the provision of a helper/assistant.
<b>barriers</b>	In this guide, this term refers to obstacles which get in the way of equality for disabled people and other people put at a disadvantage because of their protected characteristics. Unless explicitly stated, 'barriers' does not exclusively mean physical barriers. For the wider context in relation to disabled people, see <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b> .
<b>breastfeeding</b>	When a woman feeds her baby with breast milk. Breastfeeding is specifically protected for the first 26 weeks after birth by the pregnancy and maternity discrimination provisions in the Equality Act in relation to non-work cases.
<b>burden of proof</b>	This refers to where the onus of proving discrimination lies. Broadly speaking, a service user must prove facts which, if unexplained, indicate discrimination. The burden of proof then shifts to the service provider to prove there was no discrimination. If the service provider cannot then prove that no discrimination was involved, the service user will win their case.
<b>by association</b>	See <b>associated with</b> .
<b>charity</b>	A body (whether corporate or not) which is for a statutory charitable purpose that provides a benefit to the public.
<b>Code of Practice</b>	A statutory guidance document which must be taken into account by the Courts when applying the law and which may assist people to comply with the law.
<b>comparator</b>	A person with whom a claimant compares themselves to establish less favourable treatment or a disadvantage in a discrimination case. If a comparator does not exist it is often possible to rely on how a person would have been treated if they did not have the relevant protected characteristic (known as a 'hypothetical' comparator).
<b>data protection</b>	Safeguards concerning personal data provided for by statute, mainly the Data Protection Act 1998.
<b>direct discrimination</b>	Less favourable treatment of a person compared with another person because of a protected characteristic. This may be their own protected characteristic, or a protected characteristic

of someone else; for example, someone with whom they are **associated**. It is also direct discrimination to treat someone less favourably because the service provider wrongly perceives them to have a protected characteristic.

**disability**

A person has a disability if they have a physical or mental impairment which has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on that person's ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities. Sometimes people are treated as having a disability where they do not meet these criteria (e.g. people with asymptomatic cancer or HIV).

**disabled person**

Someone who has a physical or mental impairment that has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on their ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities. Sometimes people are treated as having a disability where they do not meet these criteria (e.g. people with asymptomatic cancer or HIV).

**discrimination arising from disability**

When a person is treated unfavourably because of something arising in consequence of their disability; for example, a restaurant does not allow a visually impaired customer to come in because they want to bring their dog inside. The dog is a guide dog and the reason the customer has the dog is because of their disability. If it is **objectively justifiable** to treat a person unfavourably because of something arising from their disability, then the treatment will not be unlawful. It is unlikely to be justifiable if the service user has not first made any **reasonable adjustments**.

**Disproportionately low**

Refers to situations where people with a protected characteristic are under-represented (e.g. among service users) compared to their numbers in the population.

**diversity**

This tends to be used to refer to a group of people with many different types of protected characteristic, eg people of all ages, religions, ethnic background etc.

**duty to make reasonable adjustments**

This duty arises where (1) a physical feature or (2) a provision, criterion or practice applied by a service provider puts a service user at a **substantial** disadvantage in comparison with people who are not disabled. It also applies where a service user would be put at a substantial disadvantage but for the provision of an auxiliary aid. The service provider has a duty to take reasonable steps to avoid that disadvantage by (i) changing provisions, criteria or practices, (ii) altering, removing or providing a reasonable alternative means of avoiding

physical features, and (iii) providing auxiliary aids. In many situations, a service provider must treat the disabled service user more favourably than others as part of the reasonable adjustment. More detail of the law and examples of reasonable adjustments are set out in Chapter 4 of this guide.

<b>employee</b>	A person who carries out work for a person under a contract of employment or a contract of apprenticeship or a contract personally to do work; or a person who carries out work for the Crown or a relevant member of the Houses of Parliament staff. This guide refers to someone in these categories as ‘workers’. See <b>worker</b> .
<b>employer</b>	A person who makes work available under a contract of employment, a contract of service or a contract of apprenticeship, or the Crown or a relevant member of the Houses of Parliament staff.
<b>equality policy</b>	A statement of an organisation’s commitment to the principle of equality of opportunity in the workplace.
<b>equality training</b>	Training on equality law and effective equality practice.
<b>exceptions</b>	Where, in specified circumstances, a provision of the Act does not apply.
<b>gender reassignment</b>	The process of changing or transitioning from one <del>sex</del> gender to another. See <i>also</i> <b>transsexual person</b> .
<b>gender recognition certificate</b>	A certificate issued under the Gender Recognition Act to a transsexual person who seeks such a certificate <del>and has, or has had, gender dysphoria, has lived in the acquired gender throughout the preceding two years, and intends to continue to live in the acquired gender until death.</del>
<b>goods, facilities or services</b>	Goods refer to moveable property; facilities to opportunities to enjoy a benefit or do something; and services can refer to the wide range of provisions that people might need, for example hotels, restaurants and pubs, post offices and banks, shops and market stalls, cinemas, parks, petrol stations, hospitals, telesales and services provided by bus and train operators. Goods, facilities and services must be available to the public or any part of it if they are to fall within the Equality Act.
<b>guests</b>	People invited to enjoy an association's benefits, facilities or services by that association or a member

	of it.
<b>harass</b>	To behave towards someone in a way that violates their dignity, or creates a degrading, humiliating, hostile, intimidating or offensive environment.
<b>harassment</b>	Unwanted behaviour that has the purpose or effect of violating a person's dignity or creates a degrading, humiliating, hostile, intimidating or offensive environment. <i>See also</i> <b>sexual harassment</b> .
<b>impairment</b>	A functional limitation which may lead to a person being defined as disabled according to the definition under the Act. <i>See also</i> <b>disability</b> .
<b>indirect discrimination</b>	Where a service provider applies (or would apply) an apparently neutral practice, provision or criterion which puts people with a particular protected characteristic at a disadvantage compared with others who do not share that characteristic, and applying the practice, provision or criterion cannot be objectively justified by the service provider.
<b>indirectly discriminatory</b>	<i>See</i> <b>indirect discrimination</b> .
<b>Information Society Service Provider (ISSP)</b>	A service provider which provides electronic data storage, usually for payment, for example, selling goods online.
<b>instruction to discriminate</b>	When someone who is in a position to do so instructs another to discriminate against a third party. For example, if a GP instructed their receptionist not to register anyone who might need help from an interpreter, this would amount to an instruction to discriminate.
<b>insurance business</b>	An organisation which provides financial protection against specified risks to clients in exchange for payment.
<b>judicial review</b>	A procedure by which the High Court supervises the exercise of public authority power to ensure that it remains within the bounds of what is lawful.
<b>knowledge</b>	This refers to knowledge of a person's disability which, in some circumstances, is needed for discrimination to occur. The required knowledge is of the facts of the person's disability but a service provider does not also need to realise that those

particular facts are likely to meet the legal definition of disability.

**liability**

Legal responsibility. An employer is legally responsible for discrimination carried out by workers employed by them or by their agents, unless they have taken all reasonable preventative steps.

**marriage and civil partnership**

In England and Wales marriage is no longer restricted to a union between a man and a woman but now includes a marriage between two people of the same sex.<sup>1</sup> This will also be true in Scotland when the relevant legislation is brought into force.<sup>2</sup> Same-sex couples can also have their relationships legally recognised as 'civil partnerships'. Civil partners must not be treated less favourably than married couples (except where permitted by the Equality Act).

**maternity**

See **pregnancy and maternity**.

**members**

People who have been formally accepted into membership of an association.

**minister**

Someone who is authorised to perform religious functions, such as weddings.

**monitor**

See **monitoring**.

**monitoring**

Monitoring for equality data to check if people with protected characteristics are participating, using services and being treated equally. For example, monitoring the representation of women, or disabled people, amongst service users or at senior levels within organisations.

**monitoring form**

A form which organisations use to collect equality monitoring data – from, for example, job applicants or service users. It records information about a person's protected characteristics. It is kept separately from any identifying information about the person.

**more favourably**

To treat somebody better than someone else. This is unlawful under the Act if it is because of a protected characteristic except in very limited circumstances. The law requires service providers to make reasonable adjustments for a disabled people to remove any disadvantage caused by their disability,

---

<sup>1</sup> Section 1, Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013.

<sup>2</sup> Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014

and this often *requires* treating them more favourably. A service provider can also *choose* to treat a disabled service user more favourably in other ways, even if they are not at a particular disadvantage on the relevant occasion.

<b>national security</b>	The security of the nation and its protection from external and internal threats, particularly from activities such as terrorism and threats from other nations.
<b>objective justification</b>	When something can be shown to be a proportionate means of achieving a legitimate aim – that is, the way of achieving the aim is appropriate and necessary. See also <b>proportionate</b> .
<b>office-holders</b>	There are personal and public offices. A personal office is a remunerated office or post to which a person is appointed personally under the direction of someone else. A public office is appointed by a member of the government, or the appointment is recommended by them, or the appointment can be made on the recommendation or with the approval of both Houses of Parliament, the Scottish Parliament or the National Assembly for Wales.
<b>palantypist</b>	Also known as 'Speech to Text Reporter'. A palantypist reproduces speech into a text format onto a computer screen at verbatim speeds for Deaf or hard of hearing people to read.
<b>past disability</b>	A person who has had a disability as defined by the Equality Act.
<b>perception</b>	This refers to a belief that someone has a protected characteristic, whether or not they do have it. The idea of discrimination because of perception is not explicitly referred to in the Equality Act, but it is incorporated because of the way the definition of <b>direct discrimination</b> is worded.
<b>physical barriers</b>	A physical feature of a building or premises which places disabled people at a substantial disadvantage compared to non-disabled people when accessing goods, facilities and services. See <i>also</i> physical features.
<b>physical features</b>	Anything that forms part of the design or construction of a place of work, including any fixtures, such as doors, stairs etc.
<b>positive action</b>	If a service provider reasonably thinks that people sharing a certain protected characteristic suffer a disadvantage connected to that characteristic or have different needs, or if their participation in an activity is disproportionately low, a

service provider can take any action (which would otherwise be discrimination against other people) which is a proportionate means of enabling or encouraging those people to overcome or minimise their disadvantage or to participate in activities or meeting their needs.

**positive  
discrimination**

Treating someone with a protected characteristic more favourably to counteract the effects of past discrimination. It is generally not lawful, although more favourable treatment of service users because of their disability is permitted if the service provider so wishes. Moreover, the duty to make reasonable adjustments may require a service provider to treat a service user more favourably if that is needed to avoid a disadvantage.

**pregnancy and  
maternity**

Pregnancy is the condition of being pregnant or expecting a baby. In the non-work context, protection against maternity discrimination is for 26 weeks after giving birth, and this includes treating a woman unfavourably because she is breastfeeding.

**principal**

In the context used in this Guide, where a service provider uses an agent, the service provider is the **principal**.

**private disposals**

When an owner-occupier disposes of property (i.e. sells or leases etc.) without using an estate agent or publishing an advert in connection with the 'disposal'.

**procurement**

The term used in relation to the range of goods and services a public body or authority requires and delivers. It includes sourcing and appointment of a service provider and the subsequent management of the goods and services being provided.

**professional  
organisations**

A body of persons engaged in the same profession, formed usually to provide advice, maintain standards, and represent the profession in discussions with other bodies about professional concerns.

**proportionate**

This refers to measures or actions that are appropriate and necessary. Whether something is proportionate in the circumstances will be a question of fact and will involve weighing up the discriminatory impact of the action against the reasons for it, and asking if there is any other way of achieving the aim of the action.

<b>protected characteristics</b>	These are the grounds upon which discrimination is unlawful. The characteristics are: age, disability, gender reassignment, marriage and civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity, race, religion or belief, sex and sexual orientation.
<b>provision, criterion or practice</b>	Identifying a provision, criterion or practice is key to establishing <b>indirect discrimination</b> . It can include, for example, any formal or informal policies, decisions, rules, practices, arrangements, criteria, conditions, prerequisites or qualifications.
<b>public authority</b>	For the purposes of this Guidance a 'public authority' means government departments, local authorities, courts and tribunals, health authorities and hospitals, schools, prisons, and police.
<b>public bodies</b>	For the purpose of this Guidance public bodies includes public authorities (as above) as well as organisations which have a role in the processes of national governments but are not a government department or part of one. They operate to a greater or lesser extent at arm's length from Ministers. For example, quangos, a non-departmental government body or an inspectorate. This is not an exhaustive list.
<b>public functions</b>	A 'public function' for the purposes of this Guidance is any act or activities of a public nature carried out by a public authority or public body or by the private or voluntary sectors which is not already covered by the other sections of the Act dealing with services, housing, education and employment. Specifically, in relation to the private and voluntary sectors, it will cover certain acts or activities carried out on behalf of the state. Examples of public functions include: determining frameworks for entitlement to benefits or services; law enforcement; receiving someone into prison or immigration detention facility; planning control; licensing; parking controls; trading standards; environmental health; regulatory functions; investigation of complaints; child protection. This is not an exhaustive list.
<b>public sector equality duty</b>	The duty on a public authority when carrying out its functions to have due regard to the need to eliminate unlawful discrimination and harassment, foster good relations and advance equality of opportunity.
<b>qualifications bodies</b>	An authority or body which can confer qualifications.



<b>questionnaire</b>	See <b>questions procedure</b> .
<b>questions procedure</b>	A procedure under the Equality Act whereby written pre-action questions are issued to the defendant, i.e. the person or organisation against whom a discrimination claim may be made. The questions are usually put onto a standard written form which is often called a 'questionnaire'. This procedure will be abolished shortly (see, section in the Guidance on 'questions procedure' for details).
<b>race</b>	Refers to the protected characteristic of race. It refers to a group of people defined by their race, colour, nationality (including citizenship), ethnic or national origins.
<b>reasonable adjustment</b>	See the <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b>
<b>reasonable steps</b>	See the <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b> .
<b>regulations</b>	Secondary legislation made under an Act of Parliament (or European legislation) setting out subsidiary matters which assist in the Act's implementation.
<b>religion or belief</b>	Religion has the meaning usually given to it but belief includes religious and philosophical beliefs including lack of belief (e.g. atheism). Generally, a belief should affect your life choices or the way you live for it to be included in the definition.
<b>religion or belief organisations</b>	An organisation founded on an ethos based on a religion or belief. Faith schools are one example of a religion or belief organisation. See <i>also</i> <b>religion or belief</b> .
<b>religious organisation</b>	See <b>religion or belief organisations</b> .
<b>separate services</b>	Services only provided for one sex.
<b>service complaint</b>	In the context of provision of services, this is a complaint about service delivery.
<b>service provider</b>	Someone (including an organisation) who provides services, goods or facilities to the general public or a section of it. See <i>also</i> <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .
<b>service users</b>	Those accessing or using a particular service. See <i>also</i> <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .
<b>services</b>	See <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .
<b>services, goods or</b>	See <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .

## **facilities**

### **sex**

This is a protected characteristic. It refers to whether a person is a man or a woman (of any age).

### **sexual harassment**

Any conduct of a sexual nature that is unwanted by the recipient, including verbal, non-verbal and physical behaviours, and which violates the victim's dignity or creates an intimidating, hostile, degrading or offensive environment for them.

### **single-sex facilities**

Facilities which are only available to men or to women, the provision of which may be lawful under the Equality Act.

### **single-sex services**

A service provided only to men or women in certain circumstances. It is not always discriminatory to provide single-sex services, for example provision of single-sex changing facilities in a leisure centre.

### **small premises**

Premises are small if they are not normally sufficient to accommodate more than two other households (and no more than six people in addition to the owner-occupier and/or their relatives and/or close relations).

### **Specific equality duties**

These are duties imposed on certain public authorities. They are designed to ensure that the better performance by a public authority of the public sector equality duty. The specific duties are different in England, Scotland and Wales. (See *also* **public sector equality duty**).

### **stakeholders**

People with an interest in a subject or issue who are likely to be affected by any decision relating to it and/or have responsibilities relating to it.

### **substantial**

This word tends to come up most in connection with the definition of disability and the duty to make reasonable adjustments for disabled workers. The Equality Act says only that 'substantial' means more than minor or trivial.

### **terms of employment**

The provisions of a person's contract of employment, whether provided for expressly in the contract itself or incorporated by statute, custom and practice or common law etc.

### **textphone**

A type of telephone for Deaf or hard of hearing people which is attached to a keyboard and a screen on which the messages

sent and received are displayed.

<b>transsexual person</b>	<p><u>The term used in the Equality Act 2010 to describe someone who has the protected characteristic of gender reassignment. Protection extends to those treated less favourably because they are perceived to be transsexual.</u><del>A person who has the protected characteristic of gender reassignment. This may be a woman who has transitioned or is transitioning to be a man, or a man who has transitioned or is transitioning to be a woman. The law does not require a person to undergo a medical procedure to be recognised as a transsexual person. Once a transsexual person has acquired a <b>gender recognition certificate</b>, it is probably the case that they should be treated entirely as in their acquired gender.</del></p>
<b>sexual orientation</b>	<p>Whether a person's sexual attraction is towards their own sex, the opposite sex or to both sexes.</p>
<b>UK Text Relay Service</b>	<p>Text Relay is a national telephone relay service for Deaf, deafened, hard of hearing, deafblind and speech-impaired people. It lets them use a textphone to access any services that are available on standard telephone systems.</p>
<b>unfavourably</b>	<p>The term is used (instead of less favourable) where a comparator is not required to show that someone has been subjected to a detriment or disadvantage because of a protected characteristic – for example in relation to pregnancy and maternity discrimination, or <b>discrimination arising from disability</b>.</p>
<b>victimisation</b>	<p>Subjecting a person to a detriment because they have done a protected act or there is a belief that they have done a protected act i.e. bringing proceedings under the Equality Act; giving evidence or information in connection with proceedings under the Act; doing any other thing for the purposes or in connection with the Act; making an allegation that a person has contravened the Act; or making a relevant pay disclosure.</p>
<b>victimise</b>	<p>The act of victimisation</p>
<b>vocational service</b>	<p>A range of services to enable people to retain and gain paid employment and mainstream education.</p>
<b>worker</b>	<p>In this guide, 'worker' is used to refer to any person working for an employer, whether they are employed on a contract of employment (ie an '<b>employee</b>') or on a contract personally to</p>

do work, or more generally as a **contract worker**.

# Contacts

This publication and related equality and human rights resources are available from the Commission's website: [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com)

For advice, information or guidance on equality, discrimination or human rights issues, please contact the Equality Advisory and Support Service, a free and independent service.

Website [www.equalityadvisoryservice.com](http://www.equalityadvisoryservice.com)

Telephone 0808 800 0082

Textphone 0808 800 0084

Hours 09:00 to 20:00 (Monday to Friday)  
10:00 to 14:00 (Saturday)

Post FREEPOST Equality Advisory Support Service FPN4431

Questions and comments regarding this publication may be addressed to: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com). The Commission welcomes your feedback

## Alternative formats

This guide is available as a PDF file and as a Microsoft Word file from [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com). For information on accessing a Commission publication in an alternative format, please contact: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

© 2014 Equality and Human Rights Commission

First published January 2011. Last updated ~~September 2018~~ April 2014

ISBN 978-1-84206-571-6

# **What equality law means for your business**

# Contents

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>5</b>
The legal status of this guidance .....	6
<b>1. What equality law means for your business when you're providing goods, facilities or services to the public .....</b>	<b>7</b>
Who is this guide for? .....	7
What's in this guide.....	7
What else is in this guide .....	8
Making sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public .....	9
Protected characteristics.....	9
What is unlawful discrimination? .....	9
<b>Services for persons of particular age groups .....</b>	<b>15</b>
Particular types of business .....	19
Businesses selling products, such as shops and petrol stations.....	19
Banks and other financial services providers .....	22
Builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services .....	30
Estate agents, letting agents and property management companies.....	31
Gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers .....	35
Hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons .....	40
Providing services for people with a particular protected characteristic or separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women.....	41
Hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs.....	44
Theatres and other entertainment venues .....	48

Design and manufacture of goods .....	51
<b>2. Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres .....</b>	<b>53</b>
Staff behaviour.....	54
The building or other place where you deliver your services .....	54
Advertisements and marketing .....	55
Written information.....	57
Websites and internet services .....	58
Reasonable adjustments .....	59
Exceptions .....	60
Telephone access and call centres.....	61
<b>3. When you are responsible for what other people do.....</b>	<b>62</b>
When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation .....	62
How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible .....	64
How you can make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.....	65
Using written terms of employment for employees .....	65
When your workers or agents may be personally liable.....	66
What happens if the discrimination is done by a person who is not a worker of yours or your agent.....	67
What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law .....	67
What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law .....	69
What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation .....	69
<b>4. The duty to make reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people.....</b>	<b>70</b>
The three requirements of the duty.....	72
Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage? .....	76



Working out what needs to change.....	77
What is meant by ‘reasonable’ .....	78
The continuing duty on organisations .....	79
Who pays for reasonable adjustments? .....	80
When the duty is different .....	81
Associations.....	81
Rented premises or premises available to rent .....	82
Transport services .....	84
<b>5. What to do if someone says they’ve been discriminated against .....</b>	<b>85</b>
If someone complains directly to you .....	86
Alternative dispute resolution.....	87
The questions procedure .....	88
Where claims are brought.....	89
Time limits for bringing a claim.....	90
The standard and burden of proof.....	91
What the court can order you to do.....	91
More information about defending a court case.....	92
<b>6. Further sources of information and advice .....</b>	<b>93</b>
General advice and information .....	93
Business advice and information .....	94
Charities and voluntary organisations .....	95
Advice on specific issues .....	97
<b>7. Glossary .....</b>	<b>104</b>

# Introduction

This guide is one of a series written by the Equality and Human Rights Commission to explain what you must do to meet the requirements of equality law. These guides support the implementation of the Equality Act 2010. This Act brought together lots of different equality laws, many of which we have had for a long time. By doing this, the Act makes equality law simpler and easier to understand.

There are three guides giving advice on your responsibilities under equality law when providing goods, facilities and services, carrying out public functions or running an association. These are aimed at:

1. Associations, clubs and societies
2. Businesses
3. Voluntary and community sector organisations, including charities

We have produced a separate series of guides which explain what equality law means for you if you are providing education services, whether in a school or in further or higher education.

Other guides and alternative formats

We have also produced:

- A separate series of guides which explain what equality law means for you if you are an employer.
- Different guides for individual people who are using services, or working and who want to know their rights to equality.

If you require this guide in an alternative format and/or language please contact us to discuss your needs. Contact details are available at the end of the publication.

## The legal status of this guidance

This guidance applies to England, Scotland and Wales. It has been aligned with the Code of Practice on Services, Public Functions and Associations. Following this guidance should have the same effect as following the Code. In other words, if a person or an organisation who has duties under the Equality Act 2010's provisions on services, public functions and associations does what this guidance says they must do, it may help them to avoid an adverse decision by a court in proceedings brought under the Equality Act 2010.

This guide is based on equality law as it is at April 2014. Any future changes in the law will be reflected in further editions.

# **1. What equality law means for your business when you're providing goods, facilities or services to the public**

## **Who is this guide for?**

This guide is for you if your business provides any goods, facilities or services to members of the public. When you do this, equality law applies to you.

It does not matter whether you give the service for free (for example, giving someone information about your paid-for services) or if you charge for it. It does not matter if you are set up as a sole trader, a partnership, a limited company or any other legal structure. The size of your business does not matter either. Equality law applies to you.

Equality law affects everyone responsible for running your business or who might do something on its behalf, including staff if you have them.

## **What's in this guide**

This guide tells you how you can avoid all the different types of unlawful discrimination. We give you an overview of how equality law applies to all businesses, and then we go on to look at particular issues that businesses providing goods, facilities or services in different sectors may need to think about when considering what equality law requires them to do.

We give examples of issues that may affect:

- businesses selling goods, such as shops and petrol stations
- banks and other financial services providers
- builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services
- estate agents, letting agents and property management companies
- gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers

- hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons
- hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs
- theatres and other entertainment venues
- designers and manufacturers of goods – who are only covered in specific circumstances.

If your business is not in this list, it does not mean that equality law does not apply to you. Reading this guide will help you and your business. Use it to work out how to apply what it says to your business.

## ***What else is in this guide***

This guide also contains the following sections, which are similar in each guide in the series and contain information you are likely to need to understand what we tell you about running a business in a way that meets the requirements of equality law:

- Advice on how to avoid discrimination in the way you – and your staff – behave and how you provide your services, whether that is face to face, at a particular place, using written materials, by the internet or over the telephone.
- Information about when you are responsible for what other people do, for example, staff who are working for you.
- Information about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people who are (or may want to become) your service users or clients.
- Advice on what to do if someone says they've been discriminated against.
- A Glossary containing a list of words and key ideas you need to understand this guide – all words highlighted in **bold** are in this list. They are highlighted the first time they are used in each section and sometimes on subsequent occasions.
- Information on where to find more advice and support.

Throughout the text, we give you some ideas on what you can do if you want to follow equality good practice. While good practice may mean doing more than equality law says you must do, many organisations find it useful in helping them to deliver better services. Sometimes equality law itself doesn't tell you exactly how to do what it says you must do, and you can use our good practice tips to help you.

# Making sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public

First, use this list to make sure you know what equality law says you must do.

## *Protected characteristics*

Make sure you know what is meant by:

- age
- disability
- gender reassignment
- pregnancy and maternity (which includes breastfeeding)
- race
- religion or belief
- sex
- sexual orientation.

These are known as **protected characteristics**.

## *What is unlawful discrimination?*

Unlawful discrimination can take a number of different forms:

- You must not treat a person worse because of one or more of their protected characteristics (this is called **direct discrimination**). However, when the treatment is because of the age of the person, it may be permissible if you can show that what you have done is **objectively justified**.

For example:

- A shop will not serve someone because of their ethnic origin.
- A nightclub charges a higher price for entry to a man because of their sex where the service provided to a woman is otherwise exactly the same.

- You must not do something to someone which has (or would have) a worse impact on them and on other people who share a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not share that characteristic. Unless you can show that what you have done is **objectively justified**, this will be what is called **indirect discrimination**. 'Doing something' can include making a decision, or applying a rule or way of doing things.

For example:

A shop decides to apply a 'no hats or other headgear' rule to customers. If this rule is applied in exactly the same way to every customer, Sikhs, Jews, Muslims and Rastafarians who may cover their heads as part of their religion will not be able to use the shop. Unless the shop can **objectively justify** using the rule, this will be indirect discrimination.

- You must not treat a disabled person **unfavourably** because of something connected to their disability where you cannot show that what you are doing is **objectively justified**. This only applies if you know or could **reasonably** have been expected to know that the person is a disabled person. This is called discrimination arising from disability.

For example:

A shop has a 'no dogs' rule. If the shop bars a disabled person who uses an assistance dog, not because of their disability but because they have a dog with them, this would be discrimination arising from disability unless the shop can objectively justify what it has done.

The required knowledge is of the facts of the person's disability but a service provider does not also need to realise that those particular facts are likely to meet the legal definition of disability.

- You must not treat a person worse than someone else because they are **associated with** a person who has a protected characteristic.

For example:

A restaurant refuses to serve a customer who has a disabled child with them, but serves other parents who have their children with them.

- You must not treat a person worse because you incorrectly think they have a protected characteristic (**perception**).

For example:

A member of staff in a pub tells a woman that they will not serve her because they think she is a **transsexual person**. It is likely the woman has been unlawfully discriminated against because of gender reassignment, even though she is not a transsexual person.

- You must not treat a person badly or **victimise** them because they have complained about discrimination or helped someone else complain or done anything to uphold their own or someone else's equality law rights.

For example:

A customer complains that a member of staff in a café told her she was not allowed to breastfeed her baby except in the toilets. Because she has complained, the café tells her she is barred altogether. This is almost certainly victimisation.

- You must not **harass** a person.

For example:

A member of staff in a nightclub is verbally abusive to a customer in relation to a protected characteristic.

**Note:** Even where the behaviour does not come within the equality law definition of harassment, for example, because it is related to religion or belief or sexual orientation, it is likely still to be unlawful **direct discrimination** because you are giving the service to the person on worse terms than you would give someone who did not have the same protected characteristic.

In addition, to make sure that disabled people are able to use your services as far as is reasonable to the same standard as non-disabled people, you must make **reasonable adjustments**. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of **impairments** might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.



For example:

A bank branch has a flight of steps up to its entrance but it is not permitted by the local authority to build a ramp because this would block the pavement. The bank installs a platform lift so that disabled people with mobility impairments can get into the branch. This is a reasonable adjustment.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

Where you used to provide services to a person, it will still be unlawful to discriminate against them in the ways described above if what you do arises out of and is closely connected to the relationship that used to exist between you and that person.

## **What does this mean for your business?**

Because of a protected characteristic, you and anyone working for you:

- Must not refuse to serve someone or refuse to take them on as a client.

For example:

- You must not refuse to serve a woman who is breastfeeding a baby.
- You must not say you will not take people with a particular religion or belief as a client.
- Must not stop serving or working for someone if you still serve or work for other customers or clients who do not have the same protected characteristic in the same circumstances.

For example:

- You must not stop offering home visits to disabled people that you find out have a mental health condition if you go on offering them to other clients.  
That is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.
- Must not give someone a service of a worse quality or in a worse way than you would usually provide the service.

For example:

You must not keep someone waiting for service twice as long as usual because of a protected characteristic.

- Must not give someone a service with worse terms than you would usually offer.

For example:

You must not charge someone with a particular protected characteristic a higher deposit when they hire something from you.

- Must not put them at any other disadvantage.

You can still tell your customers or clients what standards of behaviour you want from them - for example, behaving with respect towards your staff and to other customers.

Sometimes, how someone behaves may be linked to a protected characteristic.

If you set standards of behaviour for your customers or clients which have a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not have that characteristic, you need to make sure that you can **objectively justify** what you have done. Otherwise, it will be indirect discrimination.

If you do set standards of behaviour, you must make **reasonable adjustments** to the standards for disabled people and avoid **discrimination arising from disability**. You can read more about reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

For example:

A couple and their teenage child who has a learning disability sit down in a café. Because of her disability, the child speaks and laughs loudly. One of the staff tells the family they will have to leave if their child is not quiet, even though the parents explain why the child is making a noise. If the child's behaviour is not causing any significant difficulties for other customers or for staff, it would probably be hard for the café to **objectively justify** telling the family to leave (in other words, withdraw the service from them), so doing this is likely to be discrimination arising from disability and/or indirect discrimination because of the child's disability. The right approach would be for the staff first to make a reasonable adjustment to the standard they expected and only then to decide if the child's behaviour was still unacceptable (which is unlikely).

**Check out:** What does equality law mean for you when you're providing services to the public: staff, places, written information, websites, telephone access?

You can read more in Chapter 2 about:

- staff behaviour
- advertisements and marketing
- how people access services: face to face, at a particular place, using written materials, by the internet or over the phone.

**Check out:** When you are responsible for what other people do.

You can read more about when you are responsible for what other people do, such as staff working for you, in Chapter 3.

**Exceptions:** There are some exceptions to the general rules of equality law, when the law may apply differently in some circumstances. You can read more next about when these exceptions may apply. Check if any of them apply to your business or situation.

## **Do any of the exceptions in equality law apply to my business or situation?**

There are some exceptions to the general rules of equality law, when people's protected characteristics may be relevant to the goods, facilities or services you provide. For businesses, these are:

- Services for particular groups:
  - Services provided for people with a particular protected characteristic.
  - Services for persons of particular age groups.
  - Separate services for men and women or single-sex services.
- Where health and safety considerations apply to pregnant women.

As well as these exceptions, equality law allows you to treat disabled people more favourably than non-disabled people. The aim of the law in allowing this is to remove barriers that disabled people would otherwise face to accessing services.

For example:

- A hairdresser visits a disabled client at home when they do not usually provide home visits, as the client has a mobility impairment that makes the sinks at the salon unsuitable for washing their hair.
- A music venue gives two tickets for the price of one to disabled people who need to bring someone with them to assist them.

## Services for particular groups

There are limited and specific situations in which you can provide (or refuse to provide) all or some of your services to people based on a protected characteristic. These exceptions apply to any organisation which meets the strict tests.

### ***Services provided to people with a particular protected characteristic***

If you normally supply services only for people with a particular protected characteristic (such as women or people of African Caribbean descent), you can carry on providing the service the same way.

For example:

A butcher only sells meat from animals which have been slaughtered in a way that conforms to particular religious requirements (Halal or Kosher meat). The butcher does not have to sell non-Halal or non-Kosher meat, even though this means that Muslim and Jewish people are more likely to be customers than others. However, the butcher cannot refuse to sell the Halal or Kosher meat to customers who are not Muslim or Jewish.

You can refuse to provide the service to someone who does not have that characteristic if you reasonably think it is impracticable for you to provide them with the service.

You can also target your advertising or marketing at a group with particular protected characteristics, as long as you do not suggest you will not serve people with a particular characteristic (unless one of the exceptions applies). You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

## Services for persons of particular age groups

There are certain exceptions if you provide services to persons of particular age groups.

- You may provide concessions in respect of a service to persons of a particular age group, such as discounts for pensioners or schemes such as the young persons' railcard.
- You may provide holiday services to persons of a particular age group where an essential feature of the holiday is to bring together persons of that age and you clearly indicate this at the time you offer the holiday, such as SAGA or 18-30 holidays.
- Where the law restricts the supply of certain services by age (for example, the sale of alcohol, tobacco or fireworks), you may withhold such services from persons who appear to be younger than a particular age and cannot provide satisfactory proof of

their age, provided you have displayed signs notifying the public that you will ask for proof of age in this way.

- Finally, there are certain exceptions allowing owners of sites housing residential mobile homes that are occupied as permanent residences to restrict occupation of their land to persons over a particular age.

There is a further exception allowing businesses to take age into account when providing financial services, such as banking, credit, insurance, and personal pension services. However, where you undertake an assessment of risk for the purposes of providing a financial service, you may only take account of a person's age in so far as this is relevant to risk and where the information is obtained from a source that it is reasonable to rely on.

### ***Separate services for men and women and single-sex services***

You are allowed to provide separate services for men and women where providing a joint service (ie one where men and women are provided with exactly the same service) would not be as effective. You are also allowed to provide separate services for men and women in different ways or to a different level where:

- providing a joint service would not be as effective, and
- the extent to which the service is required by one sex makes it not reasonably practicable to provide the service except in the different ways or to the different level.

In each case, you need to be able to **objectively justify** what you are doing.

You are allowed to provide single-sex services (services just for men or just for women) where this is **objectively justified** and:

- only men or only women require the service, or
- there is joint provision for both sexes but that is not enough on its own, or
- if the service were provided for men and women jointly, it would not be as effective and the extent to which each sex requires the service makes it not reasonably practicable to provide separate services for each sex because of the extent to which the service is required by persons of each sex, or
- the services are provided in a hospital or other place where users need special care, supervision or attention (or in parts of such an establishment), or
- the services may be used by more than one person at the same time and a woman might reasonably object to the presence of a man (or vice versa), or
- the services may involve physical contact between a user and someone else and that other person may reasonably object if the user is of the opposite sex.

For example:

- At a commercial gym and swimming pool, women-only swimming sessions could be provided as well as mixed sessions.
- Separate services for men and women could be provided by a beauty therapist where intimate personal health or hygiene is involved.
- A healthcare provider can offer services only to men or only to women, such as particular types of health screening for conditions that only affect men or only affect women.

Generally, a business which is providing separate services or single-sex services should treat a **transsexual person** according to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the ~~physical~~ sex recorded at birth~~they were born with~~), as it is unlawful to discriminate against someone because of gender reassignment. Although a business can exclude a transsexual person or provide them with a different service, this is only if it can **objectively justify** doing so.

A business may have a policy about providing its service to transsexual users, but this policy must still be applied on a case-by-case basis. It is necessary to balance the needs of the transsexual person for the service, and the disadvantage to them if they are refused access to it, against the needs of other users, and any disadvantage to them, if the transsexual person is allowed access. To do this may require discussion with service users (maintaining confidentiality for the transsexual service user). Care should be taken in each case to avoid a decision based on ignorance or prejudice.

Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so.

Transsexual people should not be routinely asked to produce their Gender Recognition Certificate (if they have one) as evidence of their legal sex. If a business requires proof of a person's legal sex, then their birth certificate should be sufficient confirmation.

~~Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes and therefore should not be excluded from single sex services.~~

## Health and safety for pregnant women

You can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because you reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and you would do the same thing in relation to a person whose health and safety might be at risk because of a different physical condition.

For example:

- The owner of a fairground bumper-car ride displays a notice which states that the ride is unsuitable for people with back injuries. When they also refuse to allow a heavily pregnant woman to go on the ride, this is likely to be allowed because of this exception.
- A beauty therapist refuses a particular treatment to a pregnant woman which they would also refuse to someone who had a heart condition. This is likely to be allowed because of this exception.

### Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires

Equality good practice can win you new customers or clients, or help you to keep existing ones, because you are showing that you aim to treat everyone well. It can also help you to avoid court claims, because you have shown that you have done everything you could be expected to do to make sure unlawful discrimination does not happen.

This guide tells you what equality law says you must and must not do to avoid unlawful discrimination.

If you want to be sure you are doing this, it is a good idea to:

- use an **equality policy** to help you check that you have thought about equality in the way you plan what you do and how you do it
- give **equality training** to everyone in your business who deals with customers or clients, to make sure they know the right and wrong ways to behave.

You may want to target people with a particular protected characteristic through **positive action** if they are currently missing out on your services. To do this, you must show that people with a particular protected characteristic have a different need or a track record of disadvantage or low participation in an activity.

## Particular types of business

The next part of this guide gives examples of particular issues that may affect:

- businesses selling goods, such as shops and petrol stations
- banks and other financial services providers
- builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services
- estate agents, letting agents and property management companies
- gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers
- hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons
- hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs
- theatres and other entertainment venues
- designers and manufacturers of goods – who are only covered in specific circumstances.

Even if your business is not in this list, equality law still applies to you. Read this guide and work out how to apply what it says to your business. It will help you not only to avoid unlawful discrimination, but will often mean you provide a better service to a wide range of customers.

### ***Businesses selling products, such as shops and petrol stations***

Equality law applies to every business that provides goods, facilities or services to the public or a section of the public.

This includes any business, large or small, that is selling goods. This could be anything from somebody who sells cosmetics door-to-door through to a large supermarket or electrical retailer.

It also includes you if you sell something alongside another service, for example, you are a garage that sells cars as well as servicing cars for customers.

It doesn't matter whether your service is free, for example, a stall handing out free newspapers, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.



Also look at:

Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

For many shops, especially small shops, the biggest question will be what reasonable adjustments they need to make to make sure that disabled people who want to buy from them are able to.

What is reasonable will depend, among other considerations, on the size and nature of your business. Just because you cannot do everything does not mean it is alright to do nothing. You must think about what it is reasonable for you to change so that disabled people with a range of different impairments are able to buy your goods.

This might include changes to the **physical features** of your premises for people who have a mobility impairment or a visual impairment, and thinking about how you (and your staff, if you have any) communicate with people.

Because the adjustments and what is reasonable for a business to do depend on the circumstances, the following are examples, not an exhaustive list.

Even if a business can't afford things like a permanent ramp and automatic doors, or is refused planning permission (and considerations like these may be factors in deciding if an adjustment is reasonable for you to make), it could, for example:

- Keep a temporary ramp just inside the door; install a simple doorbell next to the door and put a typed notice in the shop window next to the bell saying 'if you require assistance, please ring this bell' and put other notices up on the front of the counter offering assistance.
- Explain to all staff the duty to make reasonable adjustments (a note about what this means could be kept behind the till). For example, greeting customers if staff notice they have a visual impairment and offering assistance, and being ready to open the door/set up the ramp for anyone who rings the bell.
- Spend a small amount of money on a portable induction loop (which is usually contained in a small box) to make it easier for customers who use hearing aids to hear what is said to them, and make sure staff keep the loop switched on and on the counter but know they can pick it up if they need to go with a customer to the shelves. Putting a notice about the loop on the door could mean winning extra customers.
- Make the shop's entrance a different colour from the surrounding shop front to assist customers with a visual impairment.

- Designate any parking spaces close to the shop entrance as for disabled customers and make sure that non-disabled customers are challenged if they park in them.
- Move display units at the entrance of a small shop which otherwise stop wheelchair users entering, provided the units could go somewhere else without any significant loss of selling space.
- Take special orders for items for disabled customers if the business would take them for non-disabled customers.

For example:

A disabled customer who has a visual impairment wishes to buy a large-print edition of a book from a bookshop. The bookshop does not stock large-print books (nor does equality law say it has to). However, the disabled customer asks the bookshop to order a large-print copy of the book. If the bookshop would usually take special orders from non-disabled customers, a refusal to accept the disabled customer's order is likely to be unlawful.

Even if your shop is small, it is unlikely to be alright to refuse to serve a disabled person, for example, by saying that a nearby larger shop can offer them a better service. However, depending on the nature and size of your business and the type of goods you sell, it may be possible for a reasonable adjustment to be made to change how you interact with the customer.

For example:

- If a shop cannot provide a fitting room suitable for a wheelchair user, it could ask a customer to buy the clothes and try them on at home, making it clear that it will refund their money without question if they decide to return the clothes within a certain period, whereas usually only faulty goods could be returned.
- In some circumstances, it may be acceptable for a shop to take goods out to a customer in the street, but this will very much depend on the nature of the business and if there are any alternative ways round the shop's lack of accessibility, such as taking goods to a customer's home for them to look at and make a choice. It would not be acceptable to discuss the sale in the street, where a customer was expected to provide any personal information which other people could overhear, if this is not something a non-disabled customer has to put up with, or if doing this involved any loss of dignity, for example, expecting someone to make a choice of underwear in the street. So do not assume that this is a possible reasonable adjustment for your shop and its staff.

Petrol stations must make reasonable adjustments too.

For example:

At a petrol station, the manager decides that an assistant will help disabled people use the petrol pumps on request. It places a prominent notice at the pumps advertising this and a bell to ring. All new staff are told what they have to do if the bell rings: go out to the pump to serve the customer, and deal with payment. A further step could be to offer to fetch any other goods that the customer wants from the shop. In this situation, staff training and attitudes are just as important as providing the bell. The reasonable adjustment will not have been properly put in place if the assistant fails to respond to the bell, delays for a long time, or is rude to the customer in carrying out the transaction because they resent the extra effort.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4 including how to work out what is reasonable.

## ***Banks and other financial services providers***

Equality law applies to financial services providers, including banks, insurance companies, building societies, credit card companies, loan companies, hire purchase companies and credit unions.

### **Possible issues for your business**

You must not **discriminate unlawfully** because of a **protected characteristic** when giving or refusing people access to financial services such as bank accounts, overdrafts, credit and debit cards, loans, mortgages and hire purchase agreements.

If you provide insurance, pensions or annuities, there are some differences in relation to disability. If you can meet a number of strict conditions, which are explained in detail in this guide, it may be possible for you to take this protected characteristic into account when making decisions, for example when setting premiums and benefits.

There is also a more general exception permitting age to be taken into account by businesses when providing financial services, which is also explained below.

## How people are treated when they use or want to use your services

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Also look at:

Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres

Remember, it doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, when a member of staff gives information to a customer, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

It is important to avoid making assumptions about people that may lead to discrimination because of a protected characteristic.

For example:

- A mortgage provider only gives mortgages to people who work full time, assuming that part-time workers won't be reliable at making payments. Although this condition would apply to both sexes, it is likely to adversely affect more women than men since more women work part time. The mortgage provider would have to **objectively justify** the condition to avoid its being **indirect discrimination**. The right sort of approach is to look at the person's income or employment history, not their full- or part-time working status.
- A disabled person who is a long-term patient in a psychiatric hospital wishes to open a bank account. The bank incorrectly assumes that because they are in a hospital they cannot manage their own affairs. It refuses to open an account unless it is provided with an enduring power of attorney. The bank continues with its refusal despite being provided with good evidence that the person has full capacity to manage her own affairs. This is the wrong approach. It is probably **direct discrimination** because of disability. A better approach is to accept the evidence that has been given.
- A transsexual woman is questioned very closely with extra security questions whenever she uses telephone banking services because the pitch of her voice is low. This would probably count as providing a service on worse terms. A better approach would be for the bank to train its staff not to make judgments about the identity of customers based on what they sound like.

It is important to avoid discrimination in the way in which records are kept and changes are made to people's personal information.

For example:

A transsexual woman is asked for a **Gender Recognition Certificate** (GRC) when she supplies supporting documentation of her new name and asks to have her records changed. It is not necessary for her to have a GRC to have the protected characteristic of gender reassignment. If the bank asks her for more proof than it would ask someone else who changed their name for another reason, this may amount to direct discrimination.

If you are a financial service provider, you need to think particularly about different communication needs that disabled people may have, and how to combine meeting these needs with the requirement of confidentiality. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's needs in this way may be a **reasonable adjustment**. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people at in Chapter 4.

For example:

- A bank has a policy not to accept calls from customers through a third party. This could amount to indirect discrimination against a disabled person with a learning disability who may use a support worker to call the bank. The right sort of approach is to make sure the customer's records show anyone who deals with them that they may be communicating using a support worker. This is also likely to be a reasonable adjustment.
- A credit union provides information on an audio CD about its services. A customer with a visual impairment can use the CD at home to decide whether to open an account. This is an example of the right sort of approach, where the credit union is making a reasonable adjustment.
- A person with a hearing impairment who lip-reads as their main form of communication wants a secured loan from a bank. In the initial stages, it might be reasonable for the bank to communicate with them by providing printed literature or information displayed on a computer screen. However, before a secured loan agreement is signed, this particular bank usually gives a borrower an oral explanation of its contents to make sure that the customer understands the implications of what they are agreeing to. At that stage it is likely to be the right thing for the bank to arrange for a qualified lip-speaker to be present (with the customer's consent) so that any complex aspects of the agreement can be fully explained and communicated.
- An independent financial adviser insists that a disabled person with a learning disability brings a relative with them to an appointment to carry out a financial review, despite the disabled person not wishing to do this. This may result in a breach of confidentiality for the disabled person, and would therefore probably be

providing a service on worse terms. A better approach is for the financial adviser to find an independent advocacy service to support them, which may also (depending on the circumstances) be a reasonable adjustment.

## Insurance

Insurance and similar financial products involving the assessment of risk include annuities, life insurance, buildings and contents insurance, accident insurance, travel insurance, payment protection insurance, mortgage protection insurance, health insurance and critical illness cover.

In general, an insurance provider must not discriminate against a person because of a protected characteristic in relation to providing them with insurance products or in the terms of the products themselves, for example, premiums and benefits.

Ways in which an insurance provider could be in breach of equality law by discriminating because of a protected characteristic include:

- Charging a higher premium to people with a protected characteristic or giving them lower benefits or refusing them insurance altogether, either because of the protected characteristic or because you apply a condition to the policy which has a worse impact on people with that protected characteristic and you cannot **objectively justify** this.

There is an exception allowing service providers to continue to use a person's age as a criterion in designing, pricing and offering financial services, which includes insurance services. Some exceptions may also apply to disability (see below). No exceptions apply to the other protected characteristics.

For example:

An insurance company always refuses insurance to people who give a caravan site as their address. A Gypsy applies to insure their caravan which is kept on one of these sites. The insurer refuses the policy. Unless the insurer can **objectively justify** this decision, this may be indirect discrimination because of race.

- Asking some people to produce more evidence or a different type of evidence to support an insurance claim, if this is because of a protected characteristic.

For example:

An insurance company asks a long-term UK resident who has a UK driving licence but who was born outside the UK (in other words, they have a different national origin) to produce additional proof of identity when they make a claim on their car insurance, whereas people who were born in the UK are only asked for their driving licence.

If an insurance company insisted that a man applying for life insurance takes an HIV test before they will give him life insurance because his application form discloses that he is gay by referring to his male partner, this would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of sexual orientation.

However, it may be necessary to ask for more evidence relating to a protected characteristic where this is relevant to the claim. For example, a claim against health insurance (which may relate to a person's disability) could require medical evidence.

### ***Existing contracts***

In relation to **insurance business**, contracts entered into before 1 October 2010 do not have to be changed unless they are renewed or reviewed after that date (other than a general review of pricing structure). If they are renewed or reviewed, they may need to be brought into line with the Equality Act 2010 so that they do not discriminate because of a protected characteristic except if permitted by the exceptions for age and disability considered below.

For example:

An existing life insurance policy which was taken out in 1989, and has not been subsequently renewed or reviewed, continues to be lawful and does not have to be altered to comply with equality law. If it is renewed after 1 October 2010, the policy must be altered if it would otherwise discriminate because of any of the protected characteristics except in line with the exceptions for age and disability listed below.

## ***Taking certain protected characteristics into account***

It may sometimes be possible for an insurance business provider to refuse cover to someone or offer cover on different terms because of age or disability.

Different tests apply for these two different protected characteristics.

### ***Age***

An insurance business provider (and other service providers providing financial services) may continue to use a person's age as a criterion in designing, pricing and offering financial services products.

However, when it conducts an assessment of risk for the purpose of providing the financial service it must ensure that in so far as it involves a consideration of the customer's age:

- It is carried out by reference to information which is relevant to the assessment of risk, and
- The information is from a source on which it is reasonable to rely.

For example:

- A medical insurance provider could take account of a customer's age in pricing a health insurance policy where there exists a body of reliable medical evidence that supports a connection between the customer's age and the risk of developing medical conditions covered by the policy.
- However, it may not do so where the assessment of risk is based on untested assumptions, stereotypes or generalisations or evidence from an unreliable source.

The provider also must not behave towards customers in a way that could amount to **harassment** or **victimisation** relating to age.

### ***Disability***

Providers of 'insurance business' can only justify treating disabled people (including people with a **past disability**) differently when providing them with insurance if:

- the different treatment is by reference to relevant information from a source on which it is reasonable for you to rely, and
- it is reasonable for you to treat the person differently.



This means it is important to have relevant information from a reliable source when making decisions about offering insurance services to a disabled person. Using untested assumptions, stereotypes or generalisations can lead to unlawful discrimination.

For example:

- Someone who was previously a disabled person because of a mental health condition is charged a higher premium for travel insurance because of a blanket exclusion policy, even though they have not had any recurrence of their condition for many years. The insurer does not have any information that the person's past condition involves a particular risk now. It is unlikely the insurer will be able to show that the different treatment is based on relevant information from a source on which it is reasonable to rely, and that it is reasonable to treat the person differently because of their past disability. Unless it can demonstrate this, the insurer must not charge higher premiums or refuse them insurance altogether.
- A disabled person being treated for cancer applies for a life insurance policy. The insurance provider refuses the application on the basis of a medical report from the person's doctor, which makes it clear that the prognosis is as yet far from certain. This decision is based on relevant information from a source on which it is likely to be reasonable to rely and it is also likely to be reasonable to treat the disabled person differently because of it.

## **Financial services provided by an employer as part of an employment package**

If insurance or a group personal pension is provided by an **employer** as part of an employment package, the employer rather than the financial services provider must avoid unlawful discrimination because of a protected characteristic.

There are also particular rules about occupational pensions provided by employers, which are treated as part of an employee's pay.

You can find more information about both these situations in the Equality and Human Rights Commission guide *What equality law means for you as an employer: pay and benefits*.

## ***Builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public. This includes local trades people like builders, plumbers, locksmiths, electricians and gardeners.

It also includes larger companies who may specialise in particular areas of building work like heating engineering, replacement windows, loft conversions, conservatories and extensions.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, information about services which is provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

When you run a business like this, you will often have access to people's homes. This means you may have knowledge about a client's or customer's **protected characteristics** which you would not have without this access. It is important you do not use your knowledge in a way that puts your client or customer at a disadvantage, such as by breaching client confidentiality, if this would count as providing them with a worse service or on worse terms.

For example:

A plumber works on a radiator in a client's main bedroom and notices from clothing and toiletries that they are clearly in a same-sex relationship. The plumber tells their work colleagues, to the extent that the next time someone different arrives to work on the heating system, they treat the client in a hostile way. The first plumber would not have spoken about an opposite sex couple's living arrangements in the same way and it has led to the client receiving the service on worse terms, so what they have done may be unlawful discrimination because of sexual orientation. The right sort of approach is for the plumber to avoid commenting on the client's personal circumstances where these relate to a protected characteristic, and to respect client confidentiality in the same way that they would, for example, in relation to the security arrangements at a person's home.

You need to think particularly about different communication needs that disabled people may have. A failure to communicate or understand an instruction may lead to very expensive or dangerous mistakes. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's

needs in this way may be a **reasonable adjustment**. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

For example:

- A builder usually provides a written quotation before starting work. Instead, a disabled client who is visually impaired asks the builder to go through the quotation in detail while the client makes notes on their computer as a record for themselves of the quotation. Holding this meeting is likely to be a reasonable adjustment and, if so, this is an example of the right approach.
- A heating repair company installs an SMS alert system for customers needing emergency repairs to their heating systems. They do this so that their existing and potential deaf customers are able to benefit from their services as easily as other customers. This is an example of the right sort of thing to do.

## ***Estate agents, letting agents and property management companies***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public. This includes estate agents, letting agents and property management companies.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, information about properties which is provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Other issues you need to consider are:

- access to confidential information about a client's **protected characteristics**
- **reasonable adjustments** to remove barriers for disabled people
- instructions to discriminate
- managing premises.

### **Access to confidential information about a client's protected characteristics**

When you run an estate agency or similar business, you will often have access to people's homes. This means you may have knowledge about a client's or customer's

protected characteristics which you would not have without this access. It is important you do not use your knowledge in a way that puts your client or customer at a disadvantage, such as by breaching client confidentiality, if this would count as providing them with a worse service or the same service on worse terms.

For example:

An estate agent visits a client's home to draw up the property details so the house can be put on the market. From letters about medical appointments pinned on a notice board, the estate agent becomes aware that the client is a disabled person who has multiple sclerosis. The estate agent mentions this to a colleague and when the client next contacts the office, the colleague takes the call and asks about their symptoms, which makes the client feel upset that their privacy has been invaded. Even though the colleague did not mean any harm, the client is receiving the service on worse terms than a non-disabled person who would not have been treated in this way and it is therefore possible that this is unlawful discrimination because of disability. The right sort of approach is for the estate agent to avoid commenting on the client's personal circumstances where these relate to a protected characteristic, and avoiding this sort of breach of client confidentiality.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

When you are acting for clients in letting and selling property, you need to think particularly about different communication and accessibility needs that disabled people may have. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's needs in this way may be a reasonable adjustment. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

For example:

- An estate agent checks with potential purchasers how they would like to receive property particulars. This gives an opportunity for disabled people with a visual impairment to ask for them to be sent electronically. Providing the chance to request the information in a particular format and then sending the information in that format are examples of reasonable adjustments the estate agent has made.
- A letting agent works out of a first floor office without a lift. The agent's marketing material makes it clear that they will make home visits to potential clients who have a mobility impairment who would not otherwise be able to access their services. The letting agent has made a reasonable adjustment.

## Instructions to discriminate

As well as not unlawfully discriminating against a client yourself, you must not accept an **instruction to discriminate** from a property seller or landlord.

If you accept an instruction from a property seller or landlord to discriminate in disposing of housing premises (which includes letting or selling), this would be against equality law, and the person could bring a legal claim against you.

For example:

- A landlord asks a letting agent to say that their flat to let has been taken if a lesbian or gay couple ask about renting it. If the letting agent agrees, they would be just as liable as the landlord for direct discrimination because of sexual orientation.
- A property seller asks an estate agent to say that the asking price of a property has gone up if a person of a particular national or ethnic origin expresses interest in viewing the property. If the estate agent agrees, this would be direct discrimination because of race, and both the property owner and the estate agent could be taken to court by the would-be buyer.

## Managing premises

If you are managing premises as part of your business, whether those are residential or commercial premises, you must not unlawfully discriminate against, harass or victimise someone who occupies the property in the way you allow the person to use a benefit or facility associated with the property, by evicting the person or by otherwise treating them unfavourably.

For example:

- A property management company manages and controls a residential block of flats on behalf of the landlord-owner. The block has a basement swimming pool and a communal garden for use by the tenants. A disabled tenant with a severe disfigurement is told by the company that they can only use the swimming pool at restricted times because other tenants feel uncomfortable in their presence. This would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of disability and/or discrimination arising from disability.
- A property management company refuses to allow a lesbian tenant to use facilities which are available to other tenants, or deliberately neglects to inform her about facilities which are available for the use of other tenants, because she had previously made a claim of discrimination against the manager. This would almost certainly be victimisation.
- A property management company responds to requests for maintenance issues more slowly or less favourably for one tenant than similar requests from other tenants, because the tenant has a learning disability. This would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of disability in the management of premises.

You may in some circumstances be required to make reasonable adjustments to the premises you manage or the way you manage them to remove barriers for disabled people. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

## ***Gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes sport and leisure related services, such as:

- leisure centres
- swimming pools
- tennis clubs and tennis courts
- golf clubs
- rugby, cricket and football clubs
- ice rinks
- riding schools and equestrian centres
- gyms
- health and fitness clubs
- rowing and sailing clubs
- adventure centres
- sporting venues.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, free swimming sessions in a swimming pool run on behalf of a local authority, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Are you an association or a service provider?**

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are, in equality law, **associations**), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an activity
- allowing anyone to join your leisure club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee or if the service is free. If, for example, you allow a person to have a free trial session, you are still providing them with a service.



If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- Do you have more than 25 members and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to this is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider.

For example:

A private golf club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it opens its golf course, café and shop to members of the public on certain days of the week or when spectators attend to watch club competitions. If someone does not have to be a club member to take part in a competition, then the golf club is also providing competitors with a service.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your **members, associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Particular issues for you to think about are:

- whether, if you want to, you can provide separate services for men and women or a service for only men or only women
- access to changing rooms and other facilities
- what you say about what people can or must wear to take part in your activities
- whether you can put conditions on who takes part in your activities, based on people's **protected characteristics**.

## Providing separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women

If you want to provide **separate services** for men and women or a **single-sex service** for men or women only, then you need to be able to **objectively justify** providing your service in this way. You must meet other conditions as well, such as showing that a joint service would be less effective, or that men's needs and women's needs are different.

For example:

A gym restricts access to its small sauna to men at some times and women at other times. Each sex has access to a mixture of daytime and evening use. At the times when the opposite sex is excluded, the gym is providing a single-sex service for the sex which is allowed to use the sauna. The gym believes the restriction is **objectively justified** and can also show that the sauna may be used by more than one person and a woman might object to the presence of a man (or vice versa). It is likely that the provision of the service in this way will come within the exception.

You can read more about this in 'Separate services for men and women and single-sex services' at page 15.

## Access to changing rooms and other facilities

You may need to make **reasonable adjustments** to make sure that disabled people are able to change in the same privacy and comfort as non-disabled people.

For example:

The changing facilities in a women-only gym are located in a room that is only accessible by stairs. The gym owner suggests to disabled users of the gym with mobility impairments that they can change in a corner of the gym itself. This is unlikely to be a reasonable alternative method of making the service available, since it may significantly infringe upon people's dignity. However, providing an alternative private room to change in may be a reasonable adjustment.

You must also avoid discriminating against transsexual people. Treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the physical sex recorded at their birth~~they were born with~~) unless you can **objectively justify** treating them differently.

For example:

A clothes shop has separate changing areas for men and for women with individual cubicles. The shop concludes it would not be appropriate or necessary to exclude a transsexual woman from the female changing room as the privacy and decency of all users can be assured by the provision of the separate cubicles.

Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so.

~~Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes.~~

## What you say about what people can or must wear to take part in your activities

Obviously, sometimes you will require specialist or safety clothing or equipment to be worn by participants in your activities. If you make this a condition of participating in your activities, and a person says that they cannot comply with the condition because of a protected characteristic, and can show that the condition has a disproportionate impact on people who share that characteristic, you will need to **objectively justify** the condition you have put in place.

For example:

A riding stables says that all riders must wear a riding hat or helmet which meets a particular safety standard. This is because the approved helmet protects riders from serious head injury in the event of a fall. The riding stable refuses to exempt someone who usually keeps their head covered with a particular type of head covering for religious reasons. Provided the stables can **objectively justify** the refusal, this will not be unlawful **indirect discrimination** because of religion or belief, even though the requirement has a worse impact on the individual and others who share their protected characteristic.

If it is necessary to change what a disabled person wears to take part in your activities, you need to consider whether making this change amounts to a reasonable adjustment. You can read more about reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

## Whether you can put conditions on who takes part in your activities, based on people's protected characteristics

- **Health and safety and disabled people:** Make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk. Disabled people are entitled to make the

same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a service provider to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

- **Health and safety and pregnancy:** A service provider can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because they reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and they would do the same thing in relation to a person with a different physical condition.

For example:

A gym restricts pregnant women's access to its steam room because it has advice from its trade association that pregnant women may be at risk from the high temperatures. It also restricts access to the steam room for people with high blood pressure and heart conditions. This is likely to come within the exception.

- **Separate sporting competitions:** Separate sporting competitions can be organised for men and women where:
  - physical strength, stamina or physique are major factors in determining success or failure, and
  - one sex is generally at a disadvantage in comparison with the other.

Separate competition for girls and boys may or may not be allowed, depending on the age and stage of development of the children who will be competing. At some ages and in some sports, it is not possible to say that boys and girls have significant differences of physical strength or stamina or that one sex is at a disadvantage in comparison with the other. Only if it is possible to say this will separate competitions be allowed.

You must not restrict the participation of a transsexual person in such competitions unless this is strictly necessary to uphold fair or safe competition, but not otherwise. In other words, treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which they present (as opposed to the ~~physical~~ sex recorded at their birth~~they were born with~~) unless there is evidence that they have an unfair advantage or there would be a risk to the safety of competitors which might occur in some close contact sports.

Sports teams can continue to select on the basis of nationality, place of birth or residence if the competitor or team is representing a country, place, area or related association or because of the rules of the competition.

Where participants in a sport or other competitive activity (such as bridge or chess) are in general put at a disadvantage compared to persons of another age group by their physical or mental strength, agility, stamina, physique, mobility, maturity or manual dexterity, you can restrict participation by reference to age in so far as it is necessary to secure fair competition or the safety of competitors, to comply with the rules of a national or international competition, or to increase participation in that activity.

This exception will allow, for example:

- selection on the basis of age for national and international tournaments where the rules of the tournament in question require this.
- Under 21s football tournaments or veterans tennis leagues.

But will not allow:

- Age limits based only on historic, habitual or social reasons not related to securing fair competition or the safety of competitors, complying with the rules of a national or international competition, or increasing participation in the activity, which cannot otherwise be **objectively justified**.

## ***Hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes hairdressers, barbers, beauty salons, spas and manicure services among others. This ranges from sole traders who visit people in their own homes to large national chains.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a free haircut provided to people willing to be models, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Particular issues for you to think about are:

- whether, if you want to, you can provide services for people with a particular protected characteristic, or separate services for men and women, or a service for only men or only women
- access to washbasins, changing rooms, treatment rooms and other facilities
- whether you can put conditions on who uses your services, based on people's **protected characteristics**.

## *Providing services for people with a particular protected characteristic or separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women*

### **Services for people with a particular protected characteristic**

If you normally supply services only for people with a particular protected characteristic (such as gay men or lesbians), you can carry on providing the service the same way.

You can refuse to provide the service to someone who does not have that characteristic if you reasonably think it is impracticable for you to provide them with the service.

For example:

A hairdresser provides African Caribbean hairdressing services. Equality law does not force the hairdresser to provide European-style hairdressing services. However, if a white European woman asks for her hair to be styled in a way that the hairdresser would provide to an African Caribbean woman, such as braiding, the hairdresser cannot refuse to do this unless the hairdresser reasonably believes it would be impracticable, for example, because of the length or nature of the person's hair.

You can also target your advertising or marketing at a group with particular protected characteristics, so long as you do not suggest you will not serve people with a particular characteristic (unless one of the exceptions applies). You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

### **Separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women**

If you run a beauty-related business and want to provide separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for men or women only, then you need to be able to **objectively justify** providing your service in this way. You must meet other conditions as well, such as that a joint service would be less effective, or that men's needs and women's needs are different.

For example:

A beauty therapist who operates on her own and provides massages in clients' own homes only provides this service to women. She believes the restriction is **objectively justified** and it also involves physical contact between the client and herself, which is something she has a reasonable objection to. It is likely that the provision of the service in this way will come within the exception.

You can read more about this in 'Separate services for men and women and single-sex services' at page 15.

## Access to washbasins, treatment rooms, and other facilities

You need to consider what **reasonable adjustments** are needed to remove barriers to disabled people in using your services. This is not necessarily about **physical features** at your premises; you could adapt the way you provide your services.

For example:

A beauty salon usually carries out a facial for clients by asking them to lie on a high bed in a treatment room. A client who is a disabled person with a mobility impairment would not be able to get up onto the high bed. The salon decides that it will consider alternative ways of carrying out its services as a reasonable adjustment, such as carrying out the facial for a client sitting in a chair or lying on a lower couch if this is available. It advertises on its marketing material that it will make reasonable adjustments for disabled people, showing that it has thought in advance about the need for reasonable adjustments, rather than waiting for an individual client to ask to access the service.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

You must also avoid discriminating against transsexual people in accessing your services or using your facilities. Treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the ~~physical~~ sex recorded at their birth~~they were born with~~) unless you can **objectively justify** treating them differently. Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so. Make sure you and your staff take care to avoid a decision based on ignorance or prejudice, as this may lead to unlawful discrimination.

~~Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes.~~

## Whether you can put conditions on who uses your services, based on people's protected characteristics

- **Health and safety and disabled people:** Make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk. Disabled people are entitled to make the same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a **service provider** to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and

managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

For example:

A spa refuses to allow disabled people who are receiving chemotherapy for cancer to have aromatherapy massages. This is because the spa owner understands there is uncertainty about the interaction of aromatherapy oils and the drugs used in chemotherapy. A disabled person who is affected by the refusal says this is indirect discrimination because it stops her and other disabled people in the same position receiving the service. Provided the spa owner can **objectively justify** the refusal, this will not be unlawful discrimination because of disability. However, a reasonable adjustment might be to offer a similar massage using unscented oil instead.



- **Health and safety and pregnancy:** A service provider can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because they reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and they would do the same thing in relation to a person with a different physical condition.

For example:

A beauty salon states that some of its treatments are unsuitable for pregnant women and people with high blood pressure or heart conditions. Provided it reasonably believes that providing these treatments would create a risk to a pregnant woman's health and safety, the refusal would probably come within this exception.

## ***Hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes a wide range of different businesses and services. These include:

- hotels
- bed and breakfast establishments
- guest houses
- self-catering holidays
- hostels
- restaurants
- cafés
- bars and nightclubs
- public houses
- takeaway food establishments.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a takeaway food delivery service provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

- You may need to work out if you are an **association** (which is what equality law calls some organisations that describe themselves as clubs) or a **service provider**.
- You need to avoid unlawful discrimination if you set conditions on who you serve and the terms and conditions on which you serve them.
- Because your service is likely to be provided at a particular place, you need to consider **reasonable adjustments** to your premises or to the way you deliver your services.

## Are you an association or a service provider?

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are what equality law calls **associations**), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an event
- allowing anyone to join your dining club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee or if the service is free.

If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- do you have 25 or more **members** and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to that is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider. For example:

A private members' club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it opens its restaurant and function rooms to members of the public on certain days of the week.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your members or **associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members, associate members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## Deciding who to serve

If you decide who to serve and who not to serve based on a **protected characteristic**, you risk discriminating against your customers.

For example:

- A café owner must not ask a woman to leave their cafe because she is breastfeeding her baby.
- 'Ladies' nights' where only women receive free drinks, 'two-for-one' offers or free admission are almost certainly direct sex discrimination against men. The same would be true of any other offer which was restricted to people with a particular protected characteristic, except for disability or if the offer was an age-related concession.
- A hotel or bed and breakfast cannot refuse to give a shared bedroom to a gay or lesbian couple if they give a shared bedroom to opposite sex partners. Nor could they insist on them having a twin room if they would offer a double room to opposite sex partners, and there are double rooms available.
- A pub cannot refuse to serve a customer because they are a transsexual person or with a transsexual person. Nor should the transsexual person be given a worse standard of service, for example, by allowing other customers to make hostile remarks ~~or refusing them access to the toilets appropriate to the sex in which they present.~~
- A disabled person has epilepsy. The owner of a bar knows this and refuses to serve them because, he says, he is worried about other customers being disturbed if they have a seizure. This is likely to be **direct** disability **discrimination** and/or (less likely) **discrimination arising from disability**.
- A disabled person with a learning disability wishes to book a hotel room. The hotel receptionist pretends that all rooms are taken in order to refuse their booking because of their impairment. This is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.
- Waiting staff in a restaurant place a person with a severe facial disfigurement at a table out of sight of other customers, despite other tables being free, because they think other customers will find it embarrassing to look at the person. This is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.

You can still tell customers what standards of behaviour you want from them.

However, sometimes how someone behaves may be linked to a protected characteristic.

If you set standards of behaviour for your customers or clients which have a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not have that characteristic, you need to make sure that you can **objectively justify** what you have done. Otherwise, it will be indirect discrimination.

If you do set standards of behaviour, you must make **reasonable adjustments** to them for disabled people and avoid **discrimination arising from disability**.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

If you run a hospitality business, you will need to make sure your premises are accessible to disabled people by making reasonable adjustments. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

Reasonable adjustments are not just about physical accessibility, although this is important for some disabled people, but can be about the way in which services are offered.

For example:

A hotel's reservations system allocates rooms on a first-come, first-served basis as guests arrive and register. The effect is that on some occasions the specially refurbished rooms that it has for disabled customers are allocated to non-disabled guests, and late-arriving disabled guests cannot be accommodated in those rooms. The hotel decides to change its reservation policy so that the accessible rooms are either reserved for disabled guests in advance or are allocated last of all. This is likely to be a reasonable adjustment for the hotel to have to make.

Adjustments only have to be made if they are reasonable, taking a range of factors into account, including the nature of the business.

For example:

A nightclub with low-level lighting is very unlikely to have to adjust the lighting to accommodate customers who are partially sighted if this would fundamentally change the atmosphere or ambience of the club. This is unlikely to be a reasonable adjustment.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

## ***Theatres and other entertainment venues***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes a wide range of different businesses and services. Within this, it would include lots of different entertainment venues both large and small, such as:

- theatres
- cinemas
- music venues – everything from a large opera house through to a local jazz café
- comedy clubs
- arts festivals, including music and children's festivals.

This also applies to places that are not usually used for entertainment but have occasions when members of the public do use them for that purpose. For example, a church which holds lunchtime music recitals or an empty shop which is opened up for an arts festival.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a free concert, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

You may need to work out if you are an **association** or a **service provider**.

Because your activities take place at a particular place, you will need to make sure a venue is accessible to disabled people by making **reasonable adjustments**. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

## Are you an association or a service provider?

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are what equality law calls associations), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an event
- allowing anyone to join your jazz club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee, or if the service is free. If, for example, you allow a person to watch a concert for free, you are still providing them with a service.

If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- Are there 25 or more **members** and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to that is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider.

For example:

A private members' club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it allows members of the public to attend stand-up comedy events held in its function rooms.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your members, **associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

Reasonable adjustments are not just about changes to **physical features** or the addition of **auxiliary aids** such as a hearing loop, although these can be important to some disabled people. Consider providing information (such as programmes and publicity material) in **alternative formats** and offering an additional ticket for free to a disabled person who needs to bring an assistant.

If your venue is of a type that means that you need to restrict services based on health and safety considerations, make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk.

Disabled people are entitled to make the same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a service provider to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

For example:

A cinema manager turns away a wheelchair user because they assume, without checking, that the disabled person could be in danger in the event of a fire. Although the manager genuinely believes that refusing admission to wheelchair users is necessary in order not to endanger the health or safety of either the disabled person or other cinemagoers, they have not made enquiries as to whether there are adequate means of escape (which there are). The belief is therefore unlikely to be reasonably held. In these circumstances, the refusal of admission is unlikely to be justified. The right approach is for the manager to check the facts and to make a decision based upon them.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

## ***Design and manufacture of goods***

If your business is as a designer or manufacturer of goods then equality law does not cover your business operations as they relate to designing or making goods.

You do not have to make changes to your physical products, packaging or instructions.

You can also target the advertising or marketing of your products at a group with particular protected characteristics. You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

### **Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires**

Even though you do not have to, it can be good business sense to make goods, packaging and instructions more accessible to all potential and existing customers.

For example:

- A manufacturer of bath and skincare products puts Braille labelling on its packaging and on the plastic bottles so blind customers who read Braille can tell products apart when using them. People for whom this makes a difference are more likely to buy these products.
- A manufacturer of doorbells makes a system that incorporates a portable wireless receiver. The receiver can be carried round the home to wherever the person is at the time and it rings when the doorbell is pressed. The manufacturer decides to add a bulb to the receiver which lights up when the doorbell is pressed. This means that people with a hearing impairment will find it useful as well as anyone who is, for example, listening to music with headphones on.

There are two ways you might be covered as a **service provider**:

- If you provide information which is more than just an advertisement, you may need to supply this in **alternative formats**, if doing this would be a reasonable adjustment, which it is may be, depending on the circumstances. You can read more about making **reasonable adjustments** to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.
- If you sell or give the goods you make directly to the public, then you will be covered by equality law as if you are a shop.

So, for example, if a company sells its products by mail order, over the internet or through a factory shop, then it will have duties under equality law as a service provider.



## *Services and public functions*

Some of the activities of services providers are called public functions. It is important to know whether you carry out any public functions because other laws will apply to you if you do.

In summary, a service provider will be carrying out public functions where its activities are done on behalf of a state body (like a local authority, prison, government department etc) and they are the sort of activities that only the state could carry out or ask a service provider to carry out on its behalf. Examples of public functions include: determining frameworks for entitlement to benefits or services; law enforcement; receiving someone into prison or immigration detention facility; planning control; licensing; parking controls; trading standards; environmental health; regulatory functions; investigation of complaints; child protection. This is not an exhaustive list.

It will often not matter whether what is being done is technically a service or a public function. This is because, in general, equality law applies in a very similar way to services and to public functions. However, public sector organisations and others who carry out public functions on their behalf have additional legal obligations.

Public sector organisations and service providers who carry out public functions for them, must have what the law calls 'due regard' to the need to eliminate the types of conduct which are prohibited under the Equality Act 2010 and discussed in this guide, and to advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between people who have particular protected characteristics and people who don't. This is called the 'public sector equality duty'. The three aims of the duty apply to all protected characteristics apart from marriage and civil partnership, which is only relevant to the first aim (eliminating discrimination). Thus a body subject to the duty must have due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination because of marriage or civil partnership in the context of employment, where it is prohibited under the Equality Act 2010.

In the case of service providers who are not public authorities, they are only subject to the public sector equality duty in respect of the public functions they carry out.

Some public authorities are also subject to what are known as specific equality duties. These require those public authorities to which they apply to take specific steps that are designed to enable them to better perform the public sector equality duty. The specific duties are different in England, Scotland and Wales.

In addition, public sector organisations and service providers which carry out public functions for them must also comply with the Human Rights Act 1998.

Further information about the public sector equality duties and the Human Rights Act is available from the Equality and Human Rights Commission.

## 2. Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres

Whether you run or work in a business, the public sector, a voluntary or community sector organisation or a club or association, the way you deliver your **services** matters.

You need to make sure that you do what equality law says you must do in relation to:

- the behaviour of staff who are dealing with customers, clients, service users, club members, associate members or **guests** or who are taking decisions about how you provide **goods**, **facilities** or **services** to the public or a section of the public
- the building or other place where you deliver your services if this is open to the public or a section of the public
- advertisements and marketing
- written materials, for example, information leaflets you provide as part of your service
- websites and internet services
- telephone access and call centres.

## Staff behaviour

How you and any staff who work for your organisation behave towards customers, clients, service users, members, associates or guests in relation to their **protected characteristics** will be at the heart of whether your organisation delivers **services** without unlawful discrimination, **harassment** or **victimisation** and whether it makes **reasonable adjustments** for disabled people.

### Equality good practice tip for how you and your staff should behave

Ideally, you want anyone who comes into contact with members of the public to treat everyone they come across with dignity and respect. This will help you provide good customer service (not just without unlawfully discriminating but more generally) and can make customers less likely to complain.

Tell your staff how to behave so that they do not discriminate against people because of a protected characteristic – and make sure you know what this means too. By doing this, you will reduce the risk that you will be held responsible for their behaviour.

Even if the person who has been discriminated against does not bring a legal case against your organisation, your reputation may suffer.

This does not just apply to situations where you and your staff are dealing directly with members of the public, but also to how your services are planned. This is the point at which a decision might be made, a rule might be applied or a way of doing things might be worked out which will affect how someone accesses your services. If this has a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who did not have that characteristic, then it will be **indirect discrimination** unless you are able to **objectively justify** the decision, rule or way of doing things.

So it is important that you and everyone who works for you knows how equality law applies to what you and they are doing.

For how to make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to them, see Chapter 3.

## The building or other place where you deliver your services

If you deliver your services at a particular place or places, such as a building or an open air venue, you must make sure that your customers, clients, service users, members, associate members or guests with a protected characteristic are not unlawfully

discriminated against, harassed or victimised in accessing your premises and you must make reasonable adjustments for disabled people.

You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

You should consider every aspect of your building or other premises, including:

- how people enter
- how they find their way around
- what signs you provide
- how people communicate with staff
- information you provide
- queuing systems, if you have them
- counters and checkouts. if you have them
- accessible toilet facilities.

The way your staff behave and assist your disabled customers can make a big difference to how accessible disabled people find your building and service.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

### **Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires**

You may find it helpful to make one person – which may be you – responsible for checking all these issues for your organisation.

You could make this part of your **equality policy**.

You could ask a range of disabled people – for example, by contacting local disabled people's organisations – what adjustments would make it easier for them to use your services. Then you could decide if the adjustments are reasonable adjustments for you to make.

## **Advertisements and marketing**

An advertisement includes every form of advertisement or notice or marketing material, whether aimed at members of the public or a specialised audience, including:

- in a newspaper or other publication
- by television or radio
- by display of notices
- signs
- labels
- show-cards or goods
- by distribution of samples
- circulars
- catalogues
- price lists or other material
- by exhibition of pictures
- three-dimensional models or filmed material.

Most written and other material published by you is likely to count as an advertisement if its aim is to tell customers or service users about a service.

You can target advertising material at a particular group of people, including a group who share a particular **protected characteristic**.

For example:

- A mortgage company advertises a product as particularly suitable for women by advertising that borrowers can take payment holidays if they take maternity leave.
- A bar advertises in a newspaper mostly bought by lesbian or gay women and gay men.
- A barber has flyers printed only advertising haircuts and listing prices for men.
- A community organisation makes it clear on its website that the lunch club it runs is aimed at people from a particular ethnic background.
- A sporting club advertises that particular sessions are targeted at introducing disabled people to its sport.

But, unless your services are covered by one of the exceptions to equality law, your advertisement must not tell people that, because of a particular protected characteristic,

they cannot use the service, or would not be welcome to use the service, or would receive worse terms in using the service.

For example:

- If someone advertising a service (for example, by putting a notice in a shop window) makes it clear in the advert that people from a particular ethnic group are not welcome as customers, this would amount to **direct discrimination** because of race against people who might have considered using the service but are deterred from doing so because of the advertisement.
- A flyer for a nightclub offering women free admission while men are charged for entry would probably be **unlawful**.
- An advertisement that said 'unsuitable for disabled people' would probably be unlawful.

However, you do not have to make **reasonable adjustments** in advertising your services.

For example:

If you advertise in a newspaper, you do not have to put out an equivalent advertisement on the radio just because disabled people with a visual impairment may not have been able to access the written advertisement.

### Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires

Even though you do not have to make reasonable adjustments when you are advertising your services, you may want to think about advertising in ways that will be accessible to disabled people with a range of impairments, such as Easy Read information for people with a learning disability. Doing this will help more people to access your services.

## Written information

When you provide written information as part of your service, you must not discriminate against, harass or victimise people because of a protected characteristic in:

- what the information itself says
- the way it is provided.

When you provide written information as part of your service, think about providing it **in alternative formats**, such as in Braille, on CD, or electronically, for disabled people who need the information in this form. Although it depends on your circumstances, this is likely to be a **reasonable adjustment** which you must make. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

For example:

- A café whose menu does not often change provides menus in Braille and large print so that customers with different visual impairments can independently use the menu.
- A restaurant changes its menus daily. Because of this, it considers that it is not practicable to provide menus in alternative formats, such as Braille. However, its staff spend a little time reading aloud the menu for blind customers, and the restaurant ensures that there is a large-print copy available.
- A community organisation providing health advice produces its leaflets in a range of alternative formats.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

## Websites and internet services

If you provide services through a website – such as online shopping, direct marketing or advertising – you are known as an **Information Society Service Provider (ISSP)**.

This applies whether you have a one-page website which you maintain yourself or a very sophisticated website maintained by a professional web design company, and covers anything in between.

If someone believes that they have been discriminated against by an ISSP, and the ISSP is established in the UK, they can bring a claim in the UK courts against the UK-based ISSP even if the person is not in the UK, so long as they are in a European Economic Area (EEA) member state.

As an ISSP, you must make sure:

- That you do not allow discriminatory advertisements and information to appear on your website (whatever the advertisement is for).

For example:

- A local newspaper accepts an advertisement which says that jobs at a particular company are only open to people of a particular ethnic or national origin. The newspaper puts it on its website. The advertisement **directly discriminates** because of race, and the newspaper as well as the advertiser may be liable for discrimination: the advertiser as an **employer** and the newspaper as an ISSP.
- That you do not accept requests for the placing of information that unlawfully discriminates against people because of a **protected characteristic** in using a service.

For example:

- An online holiday company established in the UK refuses to take bookings for shared accommodation from same-sex couples. A lesbian or gay couple could bring a claim for direct discrimination because of sexual orientation in the British courts regardless of whether the couple were in the UK or another EEA member state.
- That you make reasonable adjustments to make sure that your website is accessible to disabled people.

## ***Reasonable adjustments***

Where this is a reasonable adjustment (and, as with other written information, it is likely to be), your website must be accessible to all users – this will include, for example:

- people with visual impairments, who use text-to-speech software
- people with manual dexterity impairments, who cannot use a mouse
- people with dyslexia and learning difficulties.

You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.



The Royal National Institute of Blind People provides comprehensive information about web accessibility for disabled people with a range of impairments at:  
[http://www.rnib.org.uk/professionals/webaccessibility/Pages/web\\_accessibility.aspx](http://www.rnib.org.uk/professionals/webaccessibility/Pages/web_accessibility.aspx)

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4, including how you can work out what is reasonable in your circumstances.

### **Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires**

If, in your particular circumstances, it is not a reasonable adjustment for you to make all the adjustments necessary to make your website fully accessible to as many people as possible, you could make as many changes as possible to ensure good customer service. This will make it easier for everyone to use your website and mean more people can buy your products or learn about your services.

### ***Exceptions***

Where your role is a limited one – for example, you are only temporarily storing information, and not initiating the transmission, selecting the recipient or selecting or modifying the information in the transmission – you are excused from the responsibilities of an **ISSP**. This excludes, for example, websites that temporarily transmit or store messages between users.

If an ISSP is not based in the UK, then the laws of the country where it is based will apply to it, rather than UK equality law.

For example:

An online retailer, which provides tickets to major sporting events, offers discounts to large groups of men but not women when booking hospitality packages for a football tournament. The online retailer is established in Germany so in this instance a case of direct discrimination because of sex would have to be brought in the German courts regardless of whether the person complaining was in the UK or another EEA member state.

# Telephone access and call centres

You may provide services over the telephone as a main activity – for example, providing a telephone order line for the purchase of goods – or you may have a telephone service as part of your service, for example, telephone banking, or enquiry lines via a call centre.

When you provide telephone information as part of your service, you must not discriminate against, harass or victimise people because of a protected characteristic in:

- what is said when a call is answered
- the way the service is provided.

When you provide services over the telephone, you must make reasonable adjustments for disabled people who would otherwise face a barrier to accessing the service. If it is a reasonable adjustment to provide the service in a different way, then you must do it. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

For example:

- A call centre makes sure that it has a textphone to accept calls from people with a hearing impairment, as well as allowing calls to be made through a third-party interpreter.
- A community organisation offers 'live chat' with its helpline via the internet.
- A small business which offers goods for sale by phone includes an email address and mobile phone number for SMS text messaging in its marketing information and makes it clear that orders will be accepted by these methods as well as by phone.

However, if an individual disabled person asks for an adjustment that you haven't yet considered to enable them to use your service, you will need to make the adjustment if it is reasonable for you to do so.

### 3. When you are responsible for what other people do

It is not just how you personally behave that matters when you are running an organisation providing **goods**, **facilities** or **services** to the public or carrying out public functions.

If another person who is:

- employed by you, or
- carrying out your instructions (who the law calls your agent)

does something that is unlawful discrimination, **harassment** or **victimisation**, you can be held legally responsible for what they have done.

This part of the guide explains:

- When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.
- How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible.
- How you can make sure workers employed by you and your agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.
- When workers employed by you or your agents may be personally liable.
- What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law.
- What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law.
- What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation.

### When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation

If you use other people to provide services or carry out public functions for you, you are legally responsible for acts of discrimination, harassment and victimisation carried out by **workers** employed by you in the course of their employment.

You are also legally responsible as the 'principal' for the acts of your **agents** done with your authority. Your agent is someone you have instructed to do something on your behalf, but who is not a worker employed by you, even if you do not have a formal contract with them.

As long as:

- your worker was acting in the course of their employment – in other words, while they were doing their job, or
- your agent was acting within the general scope of your authority – in other words, while they were carrying out your instructions

it does not matter whether or not you:

- knew about, or
- approved of

what your worker or agent did.

For example:

- A shop assistant bars someone they know to be gay from the shop where they work because they are prejudiced against gay people. The person who has been barred can bring a case in court for unlawful discrimination because of sexual orientation against both the shop assistant and the person or company that owns the shop.
- A community organisation hires a consultant to devise a new plan for how the organisation delivers its services. The consultant acts on behalf of the organisation and in its name, both when dealing with internal staff and when dealing with external organisations. The effect of the consultant's plan is to stop some people with a particular protected characteristic accessing its services. A service user with that characteristic complains of unlawful **indirect discrimination**, saying that the new approach has a worse impact on them and other people who share the protected characteristic. The organisation is unable to **objectively justify** the approach. The consultant who made the decision which has resulted in indirect discrimination would be liable, as would the principal (in this case the organisation), which would be liable for what their agent (the consultant) has done.

However, you will not be held legally responsible if you can show that:

- you took **all reasonable steps** to prevent a worker employed by you acting unlawfully.
- an agent acted outside the scope of your authority (in other words, that they did something so different from what you asked them to do that they could no longer be thought of as acting on your behalf).

## How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible

You can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible for the behaviour of the people who work for you if you tell them how to behave so that they avoid unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

This does not just apply to situations where you and your staff are dealing face-to-face with other people when you are delivering your services, but also to how you plan what happens.

When you or your workers or agents are planning what happens to people you are delivering your services to, you need to make sure that your decisions, rules or ways of doing things do not cause:

- **direct discrimination**, or
- **indirect discrimination** that you cannot **objectively justify**, or
- **discrimination arising from disability** that you cannot **objectively justify**, or
- **harassment**

and that you have made reasonable adjustments for disabled people, which you can read more about in Chapter 4.

It is therefore important to make sure that your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.

# How you can make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing

Tell your workers and agents what equality law says about how they must and must not behave while they are working for you.

Below are some examples of reasonable steps you can take to prevent unlawful discrimination or harassment happening in your workplace:

- Telling your workers and agents about discrimination and harassment and that it is not acceptable when they start working for you – and checking from time to time that they remember what you told them, for example, by seeing if/how it has made a difference to how they behave. This could be a very simple checklist you talk them through, or you could give them this guide, or you could arrange for them to have **equality training**.
- Writing down the standards of behaviour you expect in an **equality policy**.
- Including a requirement about behaving in line with equality law in every worker's **terms of employment** or other contract, and making it clear that breaches of equality law will be treated as disciplinary matters or breaches of contract.

You can read more about equality training and equality policies in the Equality and Human Rights Commission guide *Good equality practice for employers: equality policies, equality training and monitoring*.

## Using written terms of employment for employees

Employment law says you must, as an employer, give every **employee** a written statement of the main terms of their employment. You could include a sentence in these written terms that tells the person working for you that they must meet the requirements of equality law, making it clear that a failure to do so will be a disciplinary offence.

Obviously, if you do this, it is important that you also tell the employee what it means. You could use an equality policy to do this, or you could just discuss it with them, or you could give them this guide to read. But it is important that they are clear on what equality law says they must and must not do, or you may be held legally responsible for what they do.

Remember, if the employee is a disabled person, it may be a reasonable adjustment to give them the information in a way that they can understand.

If you receive a complaint claiming unlawful discrimination in relation to your services, you can use the written terms to show that you have taken a reasonable step to prevent unlawful discrimination and harassment occurring. However, you will have to do more than this to actively prevent discrimination.

If someone does complain, you should investigate what has taken place and, if appropriate, you may need to discipline the person who has unlawfully discriminated against or harassed someone else, give them an informal or formal warning, provide training or even dismiss them; the action you take will obviously vary according to the nature of the breach and how serious it was.

If you do find that a worker employed by you has unlawfully discriminated against a service user, then look again at what you are telling your staff to make sure they know what equality law means for how they behave towards the people they are working with.

You can read more about what to do if someone says they've been discriminated against at in Chapter 5.

### Good practice tip for how you and your staff should behave

Ideally, you want anyone who works for you to treat everyone they come across with dignity and respect, including customers, clients or service users, members, associate members or guests. This will help you provide a good service (not just without discriminating but more generally).

If your staff do unlawfully discriminate against people using your services, your reputation may suffer, even if the person on the receiving end does not bring a legal case against you.

## When your workers or agents may be personally liable

A worker employed by you or your agent may be personally responsible for their own acts of discrimination, harassment or victimisation carried out during their employment or while acting with your authority. This applies where either:

- you are also liable as their employer or principal, or
- you would be responsible but you show that:
  - you took **all reasonable steps** to prevent your worker discriminating against, harassing or victimising someone, or
  - your agent acted outside the scope of your authority.

For example:

- Unknown to their employer, the receptionist in an estate agent refuses to give details of houses for rent to a client with a mental health condition. The estate agent has issued clear instructions to its staff about their obligations under equality law, has provided equality training, and regularly checks that staff are complying with the law. It is likely that the receptionist has acted unlawfully but that their employer will have a defence.

But there is an exception to this. A worker or agent will not be responsible if their employer or principal has told them that there is nothing wrong with what they are doing and the worker or agent reasonably believes this to be true.

It is a criminal offence, punishable by a fine, for an employer or principal to make a false statement which a worker employed by them or their agent relies upon to carry out an unlawful act.

## **What happens if the discrimination is done by a person who is not a worker of yours or your agent**

Usually you will not be responsible for discrimination, harassment or victimisation by someone other than your employee or agent, however, case law indicates that it is possible that they could be found to be legally responsible for failing to take action where you have some degree of control over a situation where there is a continuing course of offensive conduct, but you do not take action to prevent its recurrence even though you are aware of it happening.

## **What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law**

An employer or principal must not instruct, cause or induce a worker employed by them or their agent to discriminate against, harass or victimise another person, or to attempt to do so.



‘Causing’ or ‘inducing’ someone to do something can include situations where someone is made to do something or persuaded to do it, even if they were not directly instructed to do it.

Both:

- the person who receives the instruction or is caused or induced to discriminate against, harass or victimise, and
- the person who is on the receiving end of the discrimination, harassment or victimisation

have a claim against the person giving the instructions if they suffer loss or harm as a result of the instructing or causing or inducing of the discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

This applies whether or not the instruction is actually carried out.

## **What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law**

A person must not help someone else carry out an act which the person helping knows is unlawful under equality law.

However, if the person helping has been told by the person they help that the act is lawful, and they reasonably believe this to be true, the person helping will not be legally responsible.

It is a criminal offence, punishable by a fine, to make a false statement which another person relies on to help to carry out an unlawful act.

## **What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation**

You cannot stop equality law applying to a situation if it does in fact apply. For example, there is no point in making a statement in a contract with a client, customer or service user that equality law does not apply. The statement will not have any legal effect. That is, it will not be possible to enforce or rely on a term in a contract that tries to do this. This is the case even if the other person has stated they have understood the term and/or they have agreed to it.

For example:

A business gives a client a written contract to sign which includes a term saying that they cannot bring a claim under the Equality Act 2010. The business withdraws the service in circumstances which amount to unlawful discrimination. The term in the contract does not stop the client bringing a claim in court.

## 4. The duty to make reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people

Equality law recognises that bringing about equality for disabled people may mean changing the way in which services are delivered, providing extra equipment and/or the removal of **physical barriers**.

This is the **duty to make reasonable adjustments**.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments aims to make sure that a disabled person can use a service as close as it is reasonably possible to get to the standard usually offered to non-disabled people.

When the duty arises, you are under a positive and proactive duty to take steps to remove or prevent these obstacles.

If you are providing **goods**, **facilities** or **services** to the public or a section of the public, or carrying out **public functions**, or running an **association** and you find there are barriers to disabled people in the way you do things, then you must consider making adjustments (in other words, changes). If those adjustments are reasonable for you and your organisation to make, then you must make them.

The duty is 'anticipatory'. This means you cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance (and on an ongoing basis) about what disabled people with a range of **impairments** might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

Many of the adjustments you can make will not be particularly expensive, and you are not required to do more than it is reasonable for you to do. What is reasonable for you to do depends, among other factors, on the size and nature of your organisation and the nature of the goods, facilities or services you provide.

If, however, a disabled person can show that there were barriers you should have identified and **reasonable adjustments** you could have made, they can bring a claim against you in court, and you may be ordered to pay them compensation as well as make the reasonable adjustments.

As well as being something you are required by equality law to do, making reasonable adjustments will help a wider range of people use your services.

Once you have made a reasonable adjustment, don't forget to tell people about it. For example, put up a sign at your premises, include it in information you publish (make sure you provide **alternative formats** if appropriate) and put it on your website. This is not just because it will bring more customers; it is an essential part of meeting the duty. If the adjustment is not reasonably apparent to disabled people, they may still think they cannot use your services and in some circumstances this could mean you have not met the duty.

For example:

An airport provides transfer by electric buggy between check-in and gates for passengers with mobility impairments. Prominent signs at the entrance to the arrival and departure halls and at check-in desks assist disabled passengers in accessing that service. If the notices are not put up, and no one informs disabled passengers who require them that they exist, the adjustment would not be effective. The duty would not be met by the mere fact that they were present in the airport if disabled people who needed them were not made aware that they were available.

The rest of this section looks at the detail of the duty and gives examples of the sorts of adjustments you could make. It looks at:

- The three requirements of the duty
- Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage?
- Working out what needs to change
- What is meant by 'reasonable'
- The continuing duty on organisations
- Who pays for reasonable adjustments?
- When the duty is different
  - Associations
  - Rented premises or premises available to rent
  - Transport

# The three requirements of the duty

The duty contains three requirements that apply in situations where a disabled person would otherwise be placed at a substantial disadvantage compared with people who are not disabled.

- The first requirement involves changing the way things are done (equality law talks about where the disabled service user is put at a substantial disadvantage by a **provision, criterion or practice** of the service provider).
- Does your organisation have rules or ways of doing things, whether written or unwritten that present barriers to disabled people?

A practice may have the effect of excluding disabled people from enjoying access to your services. Or it may create a barrier or hurdle that might put disabled people at a substantial disadvantage to access your services.

It might be reasonable for you to stop the practice completely, or to change it so that it no longer has that effect.

For example:

- A private club has a policy of refusing entry during the evening to male members who do not wear a shirt and tie. A disabled member who wishes to attend in the evening is unable to wear a tie because he has psoriasis (a severe skin complaint) of the face and neck. Unless the club is prepared to change its policy at least for this member, its effect is to exclude the disabled member from the club. This is likely to be an unlawful failure to make a reasonable adjustment.
- A shop receives feedback from a customer with facial scars from severe burns that the ways in which its staff interact with her have made her feel uncomfortable and failed to provide a helpful service. The retailer decides to introduce disability awareness training, with a particular emphasis on issues around disfigurement, to improve the customer service of its staff. This is likely to be a reasonable adjustment to make.

Ask yourself, for example:

- Could you be more flexible about where or how you provide your services? Could you or your staff change a policy, criterion or practice where this is needed to remove a barrier?
- Do you insist on particular forms of communication, such as putting requests in writing? Or particular proof of identity such as a driving licence?

In addition, where you provide information to customers or clients you must take steps to ensure that the information is provided in an accessible format.

- The second requirement involves making changes to overcome barriers created by the **physical features** of your premises, if these are open to the public or a section of the public.

Where a physical feature puts disabled people using a service at substantial disadvantage, you must take reasonable steps to:

- remove the feature
- alter it so that it no longer has that effect
- provide a reasonable means of avoiding the feature, or
- provide a reasonable alternative method of making the service available to disabled people.

It is better for you to look at removing or altering the physical feature or finding a way of avoiding it (such as replacing steps with a ramp or, if it is reasonable for you to do this, a lift) before you look at providing an alternative service. An alternative service may not give disabled people a similar level of service.

Exactly what kind of changes are needed will depend on the kind of barriers your premises present. You need to look at the whole of the premises that are open to the public or a section of the public, and may have to make more than one change.

For example:

- A pub improves the paths in its beer garden so that the outside space can be accessed by disabled customers with a mobility impairment or a visual impairment.
- A small shop paints its doorframe in a contrasting colour to assist customers with a visual impairment.
- A hairdressing salon moves product display stands from just inside its door to create a wider aisle which means that wheelchair users can use its services more easily.

Physical features include: steps, stairways, kerbs, exterior surfaces and paving, parking areas, building entrances and exits (including emergency escape routes), internal and external doors, gates, toilet and washing facilities, public facilities (such as telephones, counters or service desks), lighting and ventilation, lifts and escalators, floor coverings, signs, furniture, and temporary or movable items (such as equipment and display racks).

Physical features also include the size of premises (for example, the size of an airport where a clearly signed short route to departures might enable people with a mobility impairment to use the airport more easily, or of a shopping centre, where wheelchairs, buggies and extra staff to help shoppers find their way around are made available). This is not an exhaustive list.

Sometimes you will need to ask your landlord's permission to alter rented premises. Equality law gives service providers the right to do so even if the lease states that the alteration in question is prevented by the terms of the lease.

The landlord cannot withhold their consent unreasonably although they may put in place a condition, provided that it is reasonable to do so.

If you are not sure if you are allowed to change the physical features at your premises, but you think you need to do this as a reasonable adjustment, then you should get advice. There is a list of organisations who may be able to help you at the end of this guide.

The third requirement involves providing extra aids and services such as providing extra equipment or providing a different, or additional, service (which equality law calls **auxiliary aids** or **auxiliary services**). You must take reasonable steps to provide auxiliary aids or services if this would enable (or make it easier for) disabled people to make use of any of your services.

For example:

- A shop keeps a portable induction loop on its counter so conversations with staff can be heard more easily by disabled people who use hearing aids.
- A club records its handbook onto **audio CD for members with a visual impairment**, and sends out its newsletters by email as an audio file if members ask for this.
- An accountant offers to make a home visit to a client with a mobility impairment when usually clients would come to the accountant's premises.
- A leisure centre has a regular booking by a group of deaf people. The leisure centre makes sure that the members of staff who have had basic training in British Sign Language (BSL) are rostered to work on that day to make sure that the deaf customers get the same level of service that other people would expect.

The kind of equipment or service will depend very much on the individual disabled person and what your organisation does. However you may be able to think in advance about some things that will help particular groups of disabled people.

Technological solutions may be useful in overcoming communication barriers, but sometimes a person offering assistance will be what is needed.

For example:

- Asking a disabled person with a visual impairment if they would like assistance in finding goods in a shop or having information read to them.
- Taking the time to explain services to a disabled person with a learning disability.
- If someone is being asked to make a major decision, providing a disabled person who uses British Sign Language (BSL) with a BSL to English interpreter, if it is reasonable for the organisation to do this.



If you do provide equipment, the equipment must work and be maintained. It is also important that staff know how to use the equipment

The duty is slightly different for associations, in relation to management of premises, and for transport services. These differences are explained at the end of this section of the guide.

## **Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage?**

The question you need to ask yourself is whether:

- the way you do things
- any physical feature of your premises, or
- the absence of an auxiliary aid or service

puts disabled people at a substantial disadvantage compared with people who are not disabled.

Anything that is more than minor or trivial is a substantial disadvantage.

If a substantial disadvantage does exist, then the duty to make reasonable adjustments arises.

The aim of the adjustments you make is to remove the substantial disadvantage.

But you only have to make adjustments that are reasonable for you to make.

## Good practice tips for working out whether disabled people face a substantial disadvantage in using your services

- Local disabled people's groups may be happy to help you work this out. Contact groups representing people with a range of impairments. Explain that you want to make reasonable adjustments, and ask if they can help.
- National organisations of disabled people may also have information available about the impact of different impairments.
- If your organisation is part of a group such as a local chamber of commerce, community and voluntary sector umbrella group or group of local clubs, then you could organise a joint approach and ask them to help you survey several organisations together and share good practice.
- If you belong to a national association, they may produce specialist advice on the sorts of barriers disabled people face in your sector, as well as the changes made by similar organisations to your own.
- You could commission an access audit of premises which the general public have access to.

## Working out what needs to change

If you look at the definition of disability, you will immediately realise that disabled people are a diverse group with different requirements. No single aspect of the way in which you deliver your services will create barriers for all disabled people, or, in most cases, for disabled people generally.

A practice, or a feature of your premises, which is a barrier for people with a particular impairment may present no difficulties for others with a different impairment.

Some barriers may affect some people with the same impairment differently.

For example:

People with a visual impairment who use assistance dogs will be prevented from using services with a 'no dogs' policy, whereas visually impaired people who do not use assistance dogs will not be affected by this policy. The service provider must think about the needs of both groups.

Remember, the duty is a duty to disabled people in general. You must make reasonable adjustments even if you do not know that a particular customer, client, service user or member is a disabled person or even if you believe that you currently have no disabled customers, clients, service users or members.

On the other hand, once you are aware of the requirements of a particular disabled person who uses or seeks to use your services, it might then be reasonable for you to take a particular step to meet these requirements. This is especially so where someone has pointed out the difficulty that they face in accessing services, or has suggested a reasonable solution to that difficulty.

You are not expected to anticipate the needs of every individual who may use their service. You are required to think about and take reasonable steps to overcome features that may create a disadvantage for people with particular kinds of impairments – for example, people with visual impairments hearing impairments, mobility impairments, learning disabilities and mental health conditions.

## What is meant by ‘reasonable’

You only have to do what is reasonable.

When deciding whether an adjustment is reasonable you can consider:

- how effective the change will be in assisting disabled people in general or a particular customer, client, service user or member
- whether it can actually be done
- the cost, and
- your organisation’s resources and size.

Your overall aim should be, as far as possible, to remove any disadvantage faced by disabled people.

You can consider whether an adjustment is practicable. The easier an adjustment is, the more likely it is to be reasonable. However, just because something is difficult doesn’t mean it can’t also be reasonable. You need to balance this against other factors.

If an adjustment costs little or nothing and is not disruptive, it would be reasonable unless some other factor (such as impracticality or lack of effectiveness) made it unreasonable.

Your size and resources are another factor. If an adjustment costs a significant amount, it is more likely to be reasonable for you to make it if you have substantial financial resources. Your organisation’s resources must be looked at across your whole organisation, not just for the branch or section that provides the particular service.

This is an issue which you have to balance against the other factors.

In changing policies, criteria or practices, you do not have to change the basic nature of the service you offer.

For example:

- An association which exists to taste wine does not have to hold soft drink tastings when a member's disability prevents them drinking alcohol.
- Just because some of its treatments may be unsuitable for some disabled people, such as people undergoing chemotherapy for cancer, a beauty salon does not have to stop offering certain treatments altogether.

If, having taken all of the relevant issues into account, you decide that an adjustment is reasonable then you must make it happen.

## The continuing duty on organisations

The duty to make reasonable adjustments is a continuing duty. You should keep the duty and the ways you are meeting the duty under regular review in light of your experience with disabled people wishing to access your services. It is not something that needs simply to be considered once and once only, and then forgotten. What was originally a reasonable step to take might no longer be sufficient, and the provision of further or different adjustments might then have to be considered.

For example:

A large sports complex amends its 'no dogs' policy to allow entry to assistance dogs. It offers assistance dog users a tour of the complex to acquaint them with routes. This is likely to be a reasonable step for it to have to take at this stage. However, the complex then starts building work and this encroaches on paths within the complex, making it difficult for assistance dog users to negotiate their way around. Offering an initial tour is therefore no longer an effective adjustment as it does not make the complex accessible to assistance dog users. The service provider therefore decides to offer assistance dog users appropriate additional assistance from staff while the building work is being undertaken. This is likely to be a reasonable step for the service provider to have to take in the circumstances then existing.

Equally, a step that might previously have been an unreasonable one for a service provider to have to take could subsequently become a reasonable step in light of changed circumstances. For example, technological developments may provide new or better solutions to the problems of inaccessible services.

For example:

A library has a small number of computers for the public to use. When the computers were originally installed, the library investigated the option of incorporating text-to-speech software for people with a visual impairment. It rejected the option because the software was very expensive and not particularly effective. It would not have been a reasonable step for the library to have to take at that stage. The library proposes to replace the computers. It makes enquiries and establishes that text-to-speech software is now efficient and within the library's budget. The library decides to install the software on the replacement computers. This is likely to be a reasonable step for the library to have to take at this time.

## Who pays for reasonable adjustments?

If an adjustment is reasonable, you must pay for it. You are not allowed to ask a disabled person to pay for it, even if you have made it in response to their request and even if it has cost you extra to provide it.

For example:

A guest house has installed an audio-visual fire alarm in one of its guest bedrooms in order to accommodate visitors with a sensory impairment. In order to recover the costs of this installation, the landlady charges disabled guests a higher daily charge for that room, although it is otherwise identical to other bedrooms. This increased charge is unlikely to be within the law.

Even if you charge other people for a service, such as delivering something to their home, if the reason you are providing the service to a disabled person is as a reasonable adjustment, you must not charge the disabled person for it. But if the disabled person is using the service in exactly the same way as other customers, clients, service users or members, then you can charge them the same as you charge other people.

For example:

A wine merchant runs an online shopping service and charges all customers for home delivery. Its customers include disabled people with mobility impairments. Since this online service does not create a substantial disadvantage for disabled people with mobility impairments wishing to use it, home delivery, in these

circumstances, will not be a reasonable adjustment that the wine merchant has to make. Therefore, the wine merchant can charge disabled customers in the same way as other customers for this service.

However, another wine merchant has a shop which is inaccessible to disabled people with mobility impairments. Home delivery in these circumstances might be a reasonable adjustment for the wine merchant to have to make for these customers. The wine merchant could not then charge such customers for home delivery, even though it charges other customers for home delivery.

## When the duty is different

### *Associations*

The aim of reasonable adjustments is to make sure that disabled people are able to join an association or use its services as far as is reasonably possible to the same standard usually offered to non-disabled people.

An association does not just have to think about reasonable adjustments for disabled people who are already members, associate members or guests, but also to disabled people who are:

- seeking or might wish to become members, or
- are likely to become guests.

This means the association must think in advance about what disabled people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

If it is the **physical features** of a building the association occupies or is using that put disabled people at a substantial disadvantage, the association must either:

- make reasonable adjustments to avoid the disadvantage, or
- find a reasonable alternative way of providing members, associate members and guests (and prospective members and guests) with the same access to membership and to its services.

Sometimes a reasonable adjustment may involve providing disabled people with an alternative way of using the service, which involves some level of inconvenience or segregation. However, the best kind of reasonable adjustment is one which enables disabled people to access the service in much the same way as non-disabled people. Indeed, if there is an adjustment which can reasonably be made which avoids segregation or inconvenience, then an adjustment which entails segregation or inconvenience may not be considered a reasonable adjustment at all.

Where meetings take place in a member's or associate member's home, then reasonable adjustments do not have to be made to **physical features** to make it accessible for a member who is a disabled person and for whom the physical features of the meeting place present a barrier to their attending the meeting.

But it may be a reasonable adjustment to hold the meeting at an **accessible venue**.

For example:

A cycling club has 30 members and no premises of its own. Instead members meet in the leader's house once a year for their AGM. This has no suitable access for a disabled member of the club, an amputee who uses a wheelchair. (The member uses a specially adapted tandem when cycling.) As a reasonable adjustment, the club decides to hold its meetings in a local sports hall which has suitable access.

Even if this is not a reasonable adjustment taking into account all the circumstances of the association, such as its size and resources, the association may want to consider whether as a matter of good practice it should change where it meets to an accessible venue.

## ***Rented premises or premises available to rent***

The duty to make reasonable adjustments applies to landlords and managers of rented premises or premises which are available to rent. This may include a landlord, a letting agency, a property management company, a management or residents' committee of a block of flats, and any other person who, in practice, has control over how the premises are let or managed. In this guide, these people are referred to as 'controllers of the premises'.

The letting of both commercial premises and houses for domestic use (subject to some exceptions) are covered. Letting includes sub-letting, and the granting of contractual licences to occupy premises (as opposed to an interest in the property which is granted by a lease). However, it does not include private sales (called **private disposals** in the Act) provided that an estate agent has not been used and no advert published. Similarly, it does not apply if the landlord is simply renting a room or rooms in a house with room for six people or less where the landlord or a relative or partner are still living. This is called the **small premises** exemption.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments in relation to the letting of premises is different from the usual duty to make reasonable adjustments relating to services.

First, it is not anticipatory. The duty only arises if the controller of the premises is requested to make an adjustment by a person to whom the premises are let or who wishes to rent the premises, or someone on their behalf. The request may not necessarily be made formally and the landlord should presume that they are under an obligation to make a reasonable adjustment if it is reasonable to assume that a request has been made.

For example:

A landlord is speaking to a prospective tenant on the telephone to arrange a meeting to sign a tenancy agreement. During the conversation, the tenant explains that they are visually impaired and find the print in the tenancy agreement too small. The tenant is identifying an impairment and it is likely that it would be reasonable to regard this as being a request for an auxiliary aid, such as a tenancy agreement in an alternative format. The tenant does not have to request a particular format for the landlord to have to consider an adjustment.

Second, there are just two requirements. These are:

- Providing auxiliary aids and services.
- Changing provisions, criteria or practices, including (once premises have been let) changing a term of the letting. For example, a 'no dogs' term in a lease entered into by a disabled person who uses an assistance dog.

There is no requirement to make any changes which would consist of or include the removal or alteration of a physical feature, which includes:

- any feature arising from the design or construction of a building
- any feature of any approach to, exit from or access to a building
- any fixtures or fittings in or on premises
- any other physical element or quality.

Physical features do not include furniture, furnishings, materials, equipment or other personal property.

Changes are unlikely to be treated as consisting of or including the alteration of a physical feature where they have only an incidental effect on a physical feature.

For example:

Attaching something to a physical feature, such as a wall, with a screw is unlikely to amount to an alteration of the physical feature. However, something more significant, such as installing a concrete ramp between a step and a path, is likely to amount to an alteration of a physical feature.

Things like the replacement or provision of any signs or notices, the replacement of any taps or door handles, the replacement, provision or adaptation of any doorbell or door entry system, changes to the colour of any surface (such as a wall or a door, for example)



do not count as physical features, so the duty to make reasonable adjustments could require changes to them.

The same tests apply when deciding if an adjustment is a reasonable adjustment:

- how effective the change will be in assisting the tenant or family member who needs the adjustment
- whether it can actually be done or not
- the cost
- the controller's resources and size.

Although a controller of premises is not required to alter physical features, there are specific rules about when a controller of premises must agree to tenants themselves making alterations to physical features of rented homes.

In future, there may also be specific rules about the process to be followed when requests are made for alterations to shared areas or 'common parts' of buildings and this guidance will be updated to reflect these changes.

## ***Transport services***

A transport provider's duty to make reasonable adjustments so that disabled people can use services applies to the way vehicles are operated, for example, by requiring train or station staff to assist a person with a mobility impairment in getting on and off a train, or by a bus driver telling a visually impaired person when they have reached their stop. It may require a service to be provided in a different way.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments also applies to adding auxiliary aids or equipment to existing vehicles, such as audio-visual passenger information, priority seating and contrasting handrails; these may be reasonable adjustments and, if so, the transport provider must provide them.

However, changes do not have to be made to physical features of existing land vehicles, except for some rental vehicles.

But some types of land vehicle must be replaced by a certain date with new vehicles, which do provide level access and a range of other equipment to make sure that they can be used by disabled people with a range of impairments.

Special provisions apply in relation to disability discrimination and air travel.

## 5. What to do if someone says they've been discriminated against

If a **customer, client, service user, member, associate member** or **guest** believes that you (or, if you have anyone else working for you, your **worker** or **agent**) have **unlawfully discriminated** against them, **harassed** or **victimised** them against equality law in relation to the **goods, facilities** or **services**, or **public functions** you provide, they may:

- Complain directly to you.
- Use someone else to help sort the situation out (alternative dispute resolution).
- Make a claim in court.

These are not alternatives, since the person complaining can still make a claim in court even if they first complained to you and/or used someone else to sort it out.

This part of this guide:

- looks at ways you can sort out the situation if they complain directly to you
- tells you where to find information about alternative dispute resolution (you can suggest this without waiting for the person complaining to suggest it)
- explains the questions procedure, which someone can use to find out more information from you if they think they may have been unlawfully discriminated against, harassed or victimised
- explains some key points about court procedures in discrimination cases relating to claims outside the workplace:
  - where claims are brought
  - time limits for bringing a claim
  - the standard and burden of proof
  - what the court can order you to do
- tells you where to find out more about defending a court case.

## If someone complains directly to you

If a customer, client, service user, member, associate or guest contacts you to say they have been discriminated against, you will obviously want to find out as much as possible about what has happened.

Consider the information given in this guide.

You will need to make a realistic assessment about whether what you and/or your workers and/or agents have done (or failed to do) amounts to unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

You may need to conduct an investigation into the complaint in order to form a view.

If you are an **employer**, and you think a complaint might need you to take disciplinary action against a worker employed by you, the Arbitration and Conciliation Service (Acas) publish guidance on discipline and grievance procedures.

If you feel you need to get more advice on whether what has happened was against equality law, you will find information on places where you can get help see the Further information and advice section.

If you decide that the person who complained was unlawfully discriminated against, harassed or victimised, you then need to decide the best way to solve the complaint.

If, after investigating what has happened, you decide:

- no unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation took place, or
- that you are not responsible for what has happened then tell the person who has complained.

You do not have to explain why you came to your conclusion, but it may help if you do. For example, they may decide that it is not worth taking their claim to court.

### Good practice tips on solving complaints

Defending a claim in court can be lengthy, expensive and draining, and it can have a damaging impact on the reputation of your organisation.

It is likely to be in everyone's interest to try to put things right before a claim is made to a court.

If you need to apologise to the person who has complained for the way they were treated or the way something was done, then do this.

If you need to change the way you do things so the same thing does not happen again, then do this.

Also:

- consider **equality training** for yourself and/or people working for you
- think about having an **equality policy**.

## Alternative dispute resolution

The first part of this section assumed you would do all the investigating and negotiating yourself. If you want to get help in sorting out a complaint about discrimination, you could try to get the person complaining to agree to what is usually called 'alternative dispute resolution' or ADR. ADR involves finding a way of sorting out the complaint without a formal court hearing. ADR techniques include mediation and conciliation.

You can find out more about ADR, whether any of the options might be suitable in your situation, what you have to do, and how much it might cost from the:

- **Equality Advisory Support Service (EASS)** (see *Further sources of information and advice* section).
- Scottish Government publication *Resolving Disputes Without Going To Court* if you are in Scotland).

For some sorts of cases mediation services are available through the courts service, and these can be used instead of waiting for a case to be heard by a judge. Mediation has the advantage of generally reducing cost and may successfully settle a claim without the inconvenience of a trial. You can find information about mediation services, including how to find mediators registered with the Civil Mediation Council for England and Wales here: <http://www.justice.gov.uk/courts/mediation> and for Scotland here: <http://www.scottishmediation.org.uk/>

## *The questions procedure*

It is good practice for someone who thinks that they may have experienced unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation under equality law to seek relevant information before issuing a formal claim. This can help them to decide if they have a valid claim or not.

How they can do this will depend on whether or not the claim is about something that happened before 6 April 2014.

### **Claims about events which happened before 6 April 2014**

If the claim is about something that happened before 6 April 2014, there is a set procedure which can be used to obtain information from you. It includes a set form called 'the questionnaire' or 'questions procedure' available at:

<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/discrimination-and-other-prohibited-conduct-complaints-questionnaire>

The form does not need to be used, provided the specified questions are adopted.

If you receive questions under this procedure, you are not legally required to reply or to answer the questions, but it may harm your case if you do not.

If you don't respond to the questionnaire within eight weeks of it being sent, the court can take that into account when making its judgment. The court can also take into account answers which are evasive or unclear.

There is an exception to this. The court cannot take the failure to answer into account if a person or organisation states that to give an answer could prejudice criminal proceedings and if it is reasonable to claim that it would. Most of the time, breaking equality law only leads to a claim in a civil court. Occasionally, breaking equality law can be punished by the criminal courts. In that situation, the person or organisation may be able to refuse to answer the questions if in answering they might incriminate themselves and if it is reasonable for them not to answer. If you think this might apply to you, you should get legal advice on what to do.

### **Claims about events which happened on or after 6 April 2014**

The questions procedure and the questionnaire form were abolished on 6 April 2014. For claims about events which took place on or after that date it will remain good practice for anyone who thinks that they may have experienced unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation under equality law to seek relevant information before issuing a formal claim.

The Government Equalities Office has issued a good practice guide to help individuals ask the most relevant and helpful questions and to assist you in responding to their questions. This can be found at:

<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/asking-and-responding-to-questions-of-discrimination-in-the-provision-of-goods-and-services-and-public-functions>.

That guidance makes it clear that a service provider should treat any such questions seriously and promptly and not ignore them. The questions and answers can form part of the evidence in a case brought under the Equality Act 2010.

## ***Key points about discrimination cases outside the workplace***

The key points this guide explains are:

- where claims are brought
- time limits for bringing a claim
- the standard and burden of proof
- what the court can order you to do.

## ***Where claims are brought***

If you are:

- a service provider, or
- carrying out public functions, or
- an association, including private clubs and political parties, or
- a premises provider, whether you provide housing or commercial premises, or
- in some circumstances, an education provider

then any claim against you that someone has been discriminated against (including that there has been a failure to make reasonable adjustments), harassed, or victimised on the basis of a **protected characteristic** will be brought against you in the County Court in England and Wales and in the Sheriff Court in Scotland.

If you are a **public authority**, a person who wishes to claim discrimination may also bring a claim for **judicial review** in the High Court in England and Wales or the Court of Session in Scotland. Different procedures and time limits apply to bringing such claims.

## *Time limits for bringing a claim*

If someone wants to bring a claim of unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation relating to equality law, they must bring it within six months of the act that they are complaining about.

If the person is complaining about behaviour over a period of time, then in certain circumstances the six months begins at the end of the period.

If the person is complaining about a failure to do something, for example, a failure to make **reasonable adjustments**, then the six months begins when the decision was made not to do it. If there is no solid evidence of a decision, then the decision is assumed to have been made either:

- when the person who failed to do the thing does something else which shows they don't intend to do it, or
- at the end of the time when they might reasonably have been expected to do the thing.

For example

A business sells goods over the internet. It is having its website redesigned. It looks into having its website made more accessible to disabled people and decides that doing this is a reasonable adjustment. The new website claims to be fully accessible. However, when the new website goes live, it turns out not to be any more accessible than the old one. The business does not do anything about this. A disabled person writes to the organisation and asks them to bring their website up to the standard they are claiming for it. The organisation does nothing. The time limit for bringing a claim is measured from the time when they might reasonably be expected to have made improvements to the website.

A court can hear a claim if it is brought outside this time limit if the court thinks that it would be 'just and equitable' (fair to both sides) for it to do this.

## *The standard and burden of proof*

The standard of proof in discrimination cases is the usual one in civil (non-criminal) cases. Each side must try to prove the facts of their case are true on the balance of probabilities, in other words, that it is more likely than not in the view of the court or tribunal that their version of events is true.

If someone is claiming unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation against you, then the burden of proof begins with them. They must prove enough facts from which the court can decide, in the absence of any other explanation, that the discrimination, harassment or victimisation has taken place.

Once they have done this, then, in the absence of any other explanation, the burden shifts onto you to show that you or someone whose actions or omissions you were responsible for did not discriminate, harass or victimise the person making the claim.

## *What the court can order you to do*

What the court can order if you lose your case is called 'a remedy'.

County Courts and Sheriff Courts hearing discrimination claims can grant any remedy that the High Court in England or Wales or the Court of Session in Scotland can grant for a civil wrong or in a claim for judicial review.

The main remedies available are:

- Damages (including compensation for injuries to feelings).
- An injunction in England or Wales or an interdict in Scotland) – this is an order made by the court to stop a person or organisation from acting in an unlawful way. Sometimes in England and Wales an injunction can be mandatory; that is, you have to do something (for example, you have to change a policy or make a reasonable adjustment). In Scotland an order for specific implement works in the same way.
- A declaration in England or Wales or a declarator in Scotland – this is a statement by the court which says that someone has been discriminated against.

In cases of **indirect discrimination**, if you can prove that you did not intend what you did to be discriminatory, the court must consider all of the remedies before looking at damages.

The court can also order you to pay the legal costs and expenses of the person bringing the claim. You would have to pay these on top of your own legal costs and expenses.



## More information about defending a court case

You can find out more about what to do if someone brings a court case against you from:

- In England and Wales: Her Majesty's Courts Service see the Further information and advice *section* for details.
- In Scotland: Scottish Courts Service see the Further information and advice section for details.

## 6. Further sources of information and advice

### General advice and information

#### Equality and Human Rights Commission

The Equality and Human Rights Commission is the independent advocate for equality and human rights in Britain. It aims to reduce inequality, eliminate discrimination, strengthen good relations between people, and promote and protect human rights. The Equality and Human Rights Commission helplines advise both individuals and organisations such as employers and service providers.

**Website:** [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com)

#### England

##### Manchester

Arndale House, The Arndale Centre,  
Manchester, M4 3AQ  
Telephone: 0161 829 8100  
Fax: 0161 829 8110  
Email: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

##### London

Fleetbank House,  
2-6 Salisbury Square,  
London EC4Y 8JX  
Telephone: 020 7832 7800  
Fax: 020 7832 7801  
Email: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

**Wales** (welcomes correspondence in Welsh and in English)

##### Cardiff

Ground Floor, 1 Caspian Point,  
Caspian Way,  
Cardiff Bay CF10 4DQ

Telephone: 02920 447710  
Text-phone: 02920 447713  
Fax: 02920 447712  
Email: [wales@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:wales@equalityhumanrights.com)

## **Scotland**

### **Glasgow**

151 West George Street,  
Glasgow G2 2JJ  
Telephone: 0141 228 5910  
Fax: 0141 228 5912  
Email: [scotland@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:scotland@equalityhumanrights.com)

## **Directgov**

Directgov is the UK government's digital service for people in England and Wales. It delivers information and practical advice about public services, bringing them all together in one place.

Website: [www.direct.gov.uk](http://www.direct.gov.uk)

## **Government Equalities Office (GEO)**

The GEO is the Government department responsible for equalities legislation and policy in the UK.

Website: [www.equalities.gov.uk](http://www.equalities.gov.uk)

# **Business advice and information**

## **British Chambers of Commerce (BCC)**

The BCC is the national body for a network of accredited Chambers of Commerce across the UK; each Chamber provides representation, services, information and guidance to its members.

Website: [www.britishchambers.org.uk](http://www.britishchambers.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7654 5800

Fax: 020 7000 1373

Email: [info@britishchambers.org.uk](mailto:info@britishchambers.org.uk)

### **British Retail Consortium (BRC)**

The BRC is a trade association representing a broad range of retailers. It provides advice and information for its members.

Website: [www.brc.org.uk](http://www.brc.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7854 8900

Fax: 020 7854 8901

### **EEF**

EEF is a membership organisation which provides business services to help members manage people, processes, environment and more, so that members can meet their regulatory commitments.

Website: [www.eef.org.uk](http://www.eef.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7222 7777

Fax: 020 7222 2782

### **Federation of Small Businesses (FSB)**

The FSB works to protect, promote, and further the interests of the self-employed and small business sector. It provides a range of member services.

Website: [www.fsb.org.uk](http://www.fsb.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 2020 888

Fax: 01253 348 046

## **Charities and voluntary organisations**

### **Charity Commission for England and Wales**

The Charity Commission registers and regulates charities in England and Wales. It offers them advice and provides a wide range of services and guidance to help them run as effectively as possible.

Website: [www.charity-commission.gov.uk](http://www.charity-commission.gov.uk)

Telephone: 0845 300 0218

Textphone: 0845 300 0219

### **National Council for Voluntary Organisations (NCVO)**

The NCVO provides information, advice and support to others working in or with the voluntary sector in England.

Website: [www.ncvo-vol.org.uk](http://www.ncvo-vol.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7713 6161

### **Office of the Scottish Charity Regulator (OSCR)**

The OSCR is the independent regulator and registrar for Scottish charities. It is a Non-Ministerial Department and forms part of the Scottish Administration.

Website: [www.oscr.org.uk](http://www.oscr.org.uk)

Telephone: 01382 220446

Fax: 01382 220314

Email: [info@oscr.org.uk](mailto:info@oscr.org.uk)

### **Scottish Council for Voluntary Organisations (SCVO)**

The SCVO is the national body representing the voluntary sector in Scotland and provides information, advice and support to members.

Website: [www.scvo.org.uk](http://www.scvo.org.uk)

Telephone: 0131 474 8000

Email: [enquiries@scvo.org.uk](mailto:enquiries@scvo.org.uk)

### **Voice 4 Change England**

Voice4Change England is a national policy body dedicated to strengthening the ethnic minority Third Sector. It provides a co-ordinated policy voice for ethnic minority groups and organisations and supports them to thrive.

Website: [www.voice4change-england.co.uk](http://www.voice4change-england.co.uk)

Telephone: 020 7697 4240

### **Wales Council for Voluntary Action (WCVA)**

The WCVA is the national body representing the voluntary sector in Wales and provides information, advice and support to members.

Website: [www.wcva.org.uk](http://www.wcva.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 2888 329

SMS: 07797 805628

Email: [help@wcva.org.uk](mailto:help@wcva.org.uk)

## Advice on specific issues

### **Age UK**

Age UK aims to improve later life for everyone by providing information and advice, campaigns, products, training and research.

Website: [www.ageuk.org.uk](http://www.ageuk.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 169 6565

Email: [contact@ageuk.org.uk](mailto:contact@ageuk.org.uk)

### **Carers Trust**

The Princess Royal Trust for Carers is the largest provider of comprehensive carers' support services in the UK through its unique network of 144 independently managed Carers' Centres, 85 young carers' services and interactive websites. The Trust currently provides quality information, advice and support services to over 400,000 carers, including approximately 25,000 young carers.

Website: [www.carers.org](http://www.carers.org); [www.youngcarers.net](http://www.youngcarers.net)

Telephone: 0844 800 4361

Fax: 0844 800 4362

Email: [info@carers.org](mailto:info@carers.org)

### **Carers UK**

The voice of carers. Carers provide unpaid care by looking after an ill, frail or disabled family member, friend or partner.

England

Website: [www.carersuk.org](http://www.carersuk.org)

Telephone: 0808 808 7777 (Mon to Fri, from 10am until 4pm)

Email: [advice@carersuk.org](mailto:advice@carersuk.org)

### **Centre for Accessible Environments (CAE):**

CAE is a registered charity providing information and training on the accessibility of the built environment for disabled people.

Website: [www.cae.org.uk](http://www.cae.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7822 8232

Email: [info@cae.org.uk](mailto:info@cae.org.uk)

## **ChildLine**

ChildLine is the UK's free, confidential helpline dedicated to children and young people. Advice can also be found on its website.

Website: [www.childline.org.uk](http://www.childline.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 1111

## **The Children's Legal Centre (CLC)**

The CLC provides legal advice, information and representation for children and young people.

Website: [www.childrenslegalcentre.com](http://www.childrenslegalcentre.com)

Telephone: 08088 020 008 (Mon-Fri 8am-8pm)

## **Children's Rights Alliance England (CRAE)**

CRAE provides free legal information and advice, raises awareness of children's human rights, and undertakes research about children's access to their rights.

Website: [www.crae.org.uk](http://www.crae.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7278 8222

Advice line (Tues to Thurs 3.30-5.30pm): 0800 32 88 759

Email: [info@crae.org.uk](mailto:info@crae.org.uk)

Advice email: [advice@crae.org.uk](mailto:advice@crae.org.uk)

## **Disability Law Service (DLS)**

The DLS is a national charity providing information and advice to disabled and Deaf people. It covers a wide range of topics including discrimination, consumer issues, education and employment.

Website: [www.dls.org.uk](http://www.dls.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7791 9800

Minicom: 020 7791 9801

## **Mencap**

Mencap is the leading UK charity for people with a learning disability and their families. It provides a range of services including advice and information.

Website: [www.mencap.org.uk](http://www.mencap.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 808 1111

Fax: 020 7608 3254

Email: [information@mencap.org.uk](mailto:information@mencap.org.uk)

## **Mind**

Mind is the leading mental health charity for England and Wales. It provides information to help promote understanding of mental health and campaigns to promote and protect good mental health. It has an info-line and a legal services line, and also provides online advice.

Website: [www.mind.org.uk](http://www.mind.org.uk)

Infoline: 0300 1233 393

Legal Advice Service: 0845 2259393

Email: [legal@mind.org.uk](mailto:legal@mind.org.uk)

## **Disability Rights UK**

RADAR is a national umbrella organisation with around 500 member groups. It campaigns for equal rights for disabled people and gives information and advice on disability issues.

Website: [www.disabilityrightsuk.org](http://www.disabilityrightsuk.org)

Telephone: 020 7250 3222

Fax: 020 7247 8765

Email: [enquiries@disabilityrightsuk.org](mailto:enquiries@disabilityrightsuk.org)

## **Rethink**

Rethink helps over 48,000 people every year through its services, support groups and by providing information on mental health conditions.

Website: [www.rethink.org](http://www.rethink.org)

Telephone: 0300 5000 927

(10:00 to 13:00 Monday–Friday)

Email: [advice@rethink.org](mailto:advice@rethink.org)

## **Royal National Institute for the Blind (RNIB)**

The RNIB is the UK's leading charity offering information, support and advice to over two million people with sight loss.

Website: [www.rnib.org.uk](http://www.rnib.org.uk)

Helpline: 0303 123 9999

Email: [helpline@rnib.org.uk](mailto:helpline@rnib.org.uk)

## **Action on hearing loss**

Action on hearing loss (previously RNID) offers a range of services for Deaf and hard of hearing people and provides information and support on all aspects of deafness, hearing loss and tinnitus.

Website: [www.actiononhearingloss.org.uk](http://www.actiononhearingloss.org.uk)



Telephone: 0808 808 0123  
Textphone: 0808 808 9000  
Email: [informationline@hearingloss.org.uk](mailto:informationline@hearingloss.org.uk)  
[tinnitushelpline@hearingloss.org.uk](mailto:tinnitushelpline@hearingloss.org.uk)

## **SCOPE**

Scope is the leading UK disability charity for children and adults with cerebral palsy. It provides information, help, support and advice on disability issues.

Website: [www.scope.org.uk](http://www.scope.org.uk)  
Helpline: 0808 800 3333 (9am and 5pm on weekdays)  
Email: [response@scope.org.uk](mailto:response@scope.org.uk)

## **Terrence Higgins Trust**

Terrence Higgins Trust is the leading and largest HIV and sexual health charity in the UK. It offers a range of services including advice and information for people affected by HIV.

Website: [www.tht.org.uk](http://www.tht.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0808 802 1221 (Mon to Fri, 9.30am to 5.30pm)  
Fax: 020 7812 1601  
Email: [info@tht.org.uk](mailto:info@tht.org.uk)

## **Gingerbread**

Gingerbread is a national and local charity working for, and with, single parent families, to improve their lives. It lobbies and campaigns to raise awareness and provides advice and information for single parents.

Website: [www.gingerbread.org.uk](http://www.gingerbread.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0808 802 0925 (single parent helpline)  
Email: [info@gingerbread.org.uk](mailto:info@gingerbread.org.uk)

## **Maternity Action**

Maternity Action works to end inequality and promote the health and wellbeing of all pregnant women, their partners and children from before conception through to the child's early years. It provides information sheets but cannot provide advice on individual cases.

Website: [www.maternityaction.org.uk](http://www.maternityaction.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0845 600 8533

## **Rights of Women (RoW)**

RoW is a UK voluntary organisation working to attain justice and equality by informing, educating and empowering women on their legal rights. It provides free, confidential advice on a range of issues.

Website: <http://www.rightsofwomen.org.uk>

Telephone:

Textphone: 020 7490 2562

### **Women's Aid**

Women's Aid is the key national charity working to end domestic violence against women and children. It supports a network of over 500 domestic and sexual violence services across the UK and provides a free 24-hour helpline.

Website: [www.womensaid.org.uk](http://www.womensaid.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 2000 247

Email: [info@womensaid.org.uk](mailto:info@womensaid.org.uk)

Helpline: [helpline@womensaid.org.uk](mailto:helpline@womensaid.org.uk)

### **Inter Faith Network**

The Inter Faith Network for the UK promotes good relations between people of different faiths. It has a list of contact details for faith groups and organisations across the UK.

Website: [www.interfaith.org.uk](http://www.interfaith.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7730 0410

### **Gender Identity Research and Education Society (GIRES)**

GIRES provides a wide range of information and training for Trans people, their families and professionals who care for them.

Website: [www.gires.org.uk](http://www.gires.org.uk)

Telephone: 01372 801 554

Fax: 01372 272 297

Email: [info@gires.org.uk](mailto:info@gires.org.uk)

### **The Gender Trust**

The Gender Trust is the UK's largest charity working to support transsexual, gender dysphoric and transgender people or those who are affected by gender identity issues. It has a helpline and provides training and information for employers and organisations.

Website: [www.gendertrust.org.uk](http://www.gendertrust.org.uk)

Telephone: 01527 894 838

Email: [info@gendertrust.org.uk](mailto:info@gendertrust.org.uk)

### **Press for Change (PfC)**

PfC is a political lobbying and educational organisation. It campaigns to achieve equality and human rights for all Trans people in the UK through legislation and social change. It provides legal advice, training and consultancy for employers and organisations as well as undertaking commissioned research.

Website: [www.pfc.org.uk](http://www.pfc.org.uk)

Telephone: 08448 708165 Email: [office@pfc.org.uk](mailto:office@pfc.org.uk)

### **The Albert Kennedy Trust**

The Albert Kennedy Trust provides information and support to lesbian, gay, bisexual and trans homeless young people.

Website: [www.akt.org.uk](http://www.akt.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7831 6562 (London)

Telephone: 0161 228 3308 (Manchester)

Telephone: 0191 281 0099 (Newcastle-upon-Tyne)

Email: [contact@akt.org.uk](mailto:contact@akt.org.uk)

### **Equality Network**

The Equality Network works for lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender equality and human rights in Scotland. It provides information, and carries out campaigning and policy work.

Website: [www.equality-network.org](http://www.equality-network.org)

Telephone: 0131 467 6039

Fax: 0131 476 9006

Email: [en@equality-network.org](mailto:en@equality-network.org)

### **Galop**

Galop works to prevent and challenge homophobic and transphobic hate crime in Greater London. It aims to reduce crimes against lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender people, and campaigns for an improved criminal justice system.

Website: [www.galop.org.uk](http://www.galop.org.uk)

Helpline: 020 7704 2040

Fax: 020 7704 6707

Email: [info@galop.org.uk](mailto:info@galop.org.uk)

### **The Lesbian and Gay Foundation (LGF)**

The LGF is a North-West based charity working to support lesbian, gay and bisexual people. It provides advice and information, counselling, and support groups.

Website: [www.lgf.org.uk](http://www.lgf.org.uk)

Telephone: 0845 3 30 30 30

Fax: 0161 235 8036

Email: [info@lgf.org.uk](mailto:info@lgf.org.uk)

## **Stonewall**

Stonewall is the UK's leading lesbian, gay and bisexual charity and carries out campaigning, lobbying and research work as well as providing a free information service for individuals, organisations and employers.

Website: [www.stonewall.org.uk](http://www.stonewall.org.uk)

Telephone: 08000 50 20 20

Email: [info@stonewall.org.uk](mailto:info@stonewall.org.uk)

## 7. Glossary

<b>accessible venue</b>	A building designed and/or altered to ensure that people, including disabled people, can enter and move round freely and access its events and facilities.
<b>Act</b>	A law or piece of legislation passed by both Houses of Parliament and agreed to by the Crown, which then becomes part of statutory law (ie is <i>enacted</i> ).
<b>age</b>	This refers to a person belonging to a particular age group, which can mean people of the same age (e.g. 32-year-olds) or range of ages (e.g. 18–30-year-olds, or people over 50).
<b>agent</b>	A person who has authority to act on behalf of another ('the principal') but who is not an <b>employee</b> or <b>worker</b> employed by the employer.
<b>alternative format</b>	Media formats which are accessible to disabled people with specific impairments, for example Braille, audio description, subtitles and Easy Read.
<b>anticipatory duty</b>	For service providers, the duty to make reasonable adjustments is anticipatory; within reason, it is owed to all potential disabled customers and not just to those who are known to the service provider.
<b>associate members</b>	A person who has access to some or all of an association's benefits, facilities and services because they are a member of another associated private club.
<b>associated with</b>	This is used in a situation where the reason a service user is discriminated against is not because they have a particular protected characteristic, but because they are 'associated with' another person who has that protected characteristic; for example, the other person is their friend or relative. For example, a golf club bars a person from membership because they have a disabled child. This is sometimes referred to as discrimination 'by association'.
<b>association</b>	An association of people which has at least 25 members, where admission to membership is regulated and involves a process of selection.

<b>auxiliary aid</b>	Usually a special piece of equipment to improve accessibility.
<b>auxiliary service</b>	A service to improve access to something often involving the provision of a helper/assistant.
<b>barriers</b>	In this guide, this term refers to obstacles which get in the way of equality for disabled people and other people put at a disadvantage because of their protected characteristics. Unless explicitly stated, 'barriers' does not exclusively mean physical barriers. For the wider context in relation to disabled people, see <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b> .
<b>breastfeeding</b>	When a woman feeds her baby with breast milk. Breastfeeding is specifically protected for the first 26 weeks after birth by the pregnancy and maternity discrimination provisions in the Equality Act in relation to non-work cases.
<b>burden of proof</b>	This refers to where the onus of proving discrimination lies. Broadly speaking, a service user must prove facts which, if unexplained, indicate discrimination. The burden of proof then shifts to the service provider to prove there was no discrimination. If the service provider cannot then prove that no discrimination was involved, the service user will win their case.
<b>by association</b>	See <b>associated with</b> .
<b>charity</b>	A body (whether corporate or not) which is for a statutory charitable purpose that provides a benefit to the public.
<b>Code of Practice</b>	A statutory guidance document which must be taken into account by the Courts when applying the law and which may assist people to comply with the law.
<b>comparator</b>	A person with whom a claimant compares themselves to establish less favourable treatment or a disadvantage in a discrimination case. If a comparator does not exist it is often possible to rely on how a person would have been treated if they did not have the relevant protected characteristic (known as a 'hypothetical' comparator).
<b>data protection</b>	Safeguards concerning personal data provided for by statute, mainly the Data Protection Act 1998.
<b>direct discrimination</b>	Less favourable treatment of a person compared with another person because of a protected characteristic. This may be their own protected characteristic, or a protected characteristic

of someone else; for example, someone with whom they are **associated**. It is also direct discrimination to treat someone less favourably because the service provider wrongly perceives them to have a protected characteristic.

**disability**

A person has a disability if they have a physical or mental impairment which has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on that person's ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities. Sometimes people are treated as having a disability where they do not meet these criteria (e.g. people with asymptomatic cancer or HIV).

**disabled person**

Someone who has a physical or mental impairment that has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on their ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities. Sometimes people are treated as having a disability where they do not meet these criteria (e.g. people with asymptomatic cancer or HIV).

**discrimination arising from disability**

When a person is treated unfavourably because of something arising in consequence of their disability; for example, a restaurant does not allow a visually impaired customer to come in because they want to bring their dog inside. The dog is a guide dog and the reason the customer has the dog is because of their disability. If it is **objectively justifiable** to treat a person unfavourably because of something arising from their disability, then the treatment will not be unlawful. It is unlikely to be justifiable if the service user has not first made any **reasonable adjustments**.

**Disproportionately low**

Refers to situations where people with a protected characteristic are under-represented (e.g. among service users) compared to their numbers in the population.

**diversity**

This tends to be used to refer to a group of people with many different types of protected characteristic, eg people of all ages, religions, ethnic background etc.

**duty to make reasonable adjustments**

This duty arises where (1) a physical feature or (2) a provision, criterion or practice applied by a service provider puts a service user at a **substantial** disadvantage in comparison with people who are not disabled. It also applies where a service user would be put at a substantial disadvantage but for the provision of an auxiliary aid. The service provider has a duty to take reasonable steps to avoid that disadvantage by (i) changing provisions, criteria or practices, (ii) altering, removing or providing a reasonable alternative means of avoiding

physical features, and (iii) providing auxiliary aids. In many situations, a service provider must treat the disabled service user more favourably than others as part of the reasonable adjustment. More detail of the law and examples of reasonable adjustments are set out in Chapter 4 of this guide.

<b>employee</b>	A person who carries out work for a person under a contract of employment or a contract of apprenticeship or a contract personally to do work; or a person who carries out work for the Crown or a relevant member of the Houses of Parliament staff. This guide refers to someone in these categories as ‘workers’. See <b>worker</b> .
<b>employer</b>	A person who makes work available under a contract of employment, a contract of service or a contract of apprenticeship, or the Crown or a relevant member of the Houses of Parliament staff.
<b>equality policy</b>	A statement of an organisation’s commitment to the principle of equality of opportunity in the workplace.
<b>equality training</b>	Training on equality law and effective equality practice.
<b>exceptions</b>	Where, in specified circumstances, a provision of the Act does not apply.
<b>gender reassignment</b>	The process of changing or transitioning from one <a href="#">sexgender</a> to another. See <i>also</i> <b>transsexual person</b> .
<b>gender recognition certificate</b>	A certificate issued under the Gender Recognition Act to a transsexual person who seeks such a certificate and has, or has had, gender dysphoria, has lived in the acquired gender throughout the preceding two years, and intends to continue to live in the acquired gender until death.
<b>goods, facilities or services</b>	Goods refer to moveable property; facilities to opportunities to enjoy a benefit or do something; and services can refer to the wide range of provisions that people might need, for example hotels, restaurants and pubs, post offices and banks, shops and market stalls, cinemas, parks, petrol stations, hospitals, telesales and services provided by bus and train operators. Goods, facilities and services must be available to the public or any part of it if they are to fall within the Equality Act.
<b>guests</b>	People invited to enjoy an association's benefits, facilities or services by that association or a member



of it.

<b>harass</b>	To behave towards someone in a way that violates their dignity, or creates a degrading, humiliating, hostile, intimidating or offensive environment.
<b>harassment</b>	Unwanted behaviour that has the purpose or effect of violating a person's dignity or creates a degrading, humiliating, hostile, intimidating or offensive environment. <i>See also</i> <b>sexual harassment</b> .
<b>impairment</b>	A functional limitation which may lead to a person being defined as disabled according to the definition under the Act. <i>See also</i> <b>disability</b> .
<b>indirect discrimination</b>	Where a service provider applies (or would apply) an apparently neutral practice, provision or criterion which puts people with a particular protected characteristic at a disadvantage compared with others who do not share that characteristic, and applying the practice, provision or criterion cannot be objectively justified by the service provider.
<b>indirectly discriminatory</b>	<i>See</i> <b>indirect discrimination</b> .
<b>Information Society Service Provider (ISSP)</b>	A service provider which provides electronic data storage, usually for payment, for example, selling goods online.
<b>instruction to discriminate</b>	When someone who is in a position to do so instructs another to discriminate against a third party. For example, if a GP instructed their receptionist not to register anyone who might need help from an interpreter, this would amount to an instruction to discriminate.
<b>insurance business</b>	An organisation which provides financial protection against specified risks to clients in exchange for payment.
<b>judicial review</b>	A procedure by which the High Court supervises the exercise of public authority power to ensure that it remains within the bounds of what is lawful.
<b>knowledge</b>	This refers to knowledge of a person's disability which, in some circumstances, is needed for discrimination to occur. The required knowledge is of the facts of the person's disability but a service provider does not also need to realise that those

particular facts are likely to meet the legal definition of disability.

**liability**

Legal responsibility. An employer is legally responsible for discrimination carried out by workers employed by them or by their agents, unless they have taken all reasonable preventative steps.

**marriage and civil partnership**

In England and Wales marriage is no longer restricted to a union between a man and a woman but now includes a marriage between two people of the same sex.<sup>1</sup> This will also be true in Scotland when the relevant legislation is brought into force.<sup>2</sup> Same-sex couples can also have their relationships legally recognised as 'civil partnerships'. Civil partners must not be treated less favourably than married couples (except where permitted by the Equality Act).

**maternity**

See **pregnancy and maternity**.

**members**

People who have been formally accepted into membership of an association.

**minister**

Someone who is authorised to perform religious functions, such as weddings.

**monitor**

See **monitoring**.

**monitoring**

Monitoring for equality data to check if people with protected characteristics are participating, using services and being treated equally. For example, monitoring the representation of women, or disabled people, amongst service users or at senior levels within organisations.

**monitoring form**

A form which organisations use to collect equality monitoring data – from, for example, job applicants or service users. It records information about a person's protected characteristics. It is kept separately from any identifying information about the person.

**more favourably**

To treat somebody better than someone else. This is unlawful under the Act if it is because of a protected characteristic except in very limited circumstances. The law requires service providers to make reasonable adjustments for a disabled people to remove any disadvantage caused by their disability,

---

<sup>1</sup> Section 1, Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013.

<sup>2</sup> Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014

and this often *requires* treating them more favourably. A service provider can also *choose* to treat a disabled service user more favourably in other ways, even if they are not at a particular disadvantage on the relevant occasion.

<b>national security</b>	The security of the nation and its protection from external and internal threats, particularly from activities such as terrorism and threats from other nations.
<b>objective justification</b>	When something can be shown to be a proportionate means of achieving a legitimate aim – that is, the way of achieving the aim is appropriate and necessary. See also <b>proportionate</b> .
<b>office-holders</b>	There are personal and public offices. A personal office is a remunerated office or post to which a person is appointed personally under the direction of someone else. A public office is appointed by a member of the government, or the appointment is recommended by them, or the appointment can be made on the recommendation or with the approval of both Houses of Parliament, the Scottish Parliament or the National Assembly for Wales.
<b>palantypist</b>	Also known as 'Speech to Text Reporter'. A palantypist reproduces speech into a text format onto a computer screen at verbatim speeds for Deaf or hard of hearing people to read.
<b>past disability</b>	A person who has had a disability as defined by the Equality Act.
<b>perception</b>	This refers to a belief that someone has a protected characteristic, whether or not they do have it. The idea of discrimination because of perception is not explicitly referred to in the Equality Act, but it is incorporated because of the way the definition of <b>direct discrimination</b> is worded.
<b>physical barriers</b>	A physical feature of a building or premises which places disabled people at a substantial disadvantage compared to non-disabled people when accessing goods, facilities and services. See <i>also</i> physical features.
<b>physical features</b>	Anything that forms part of the design or construction of a place of work, including any fixtures, such as doors, stairs etc.
<b>positive action</b>	If a service provider reasonably thinks that people sharing a certain protected characteristic suffer a disadvantage connected to that characteristic or have different needs, or if their participation in an activity is disproportionately low, a

service provider can take any action (which would otherwise be discrimination against other people) which is a proportionate means of enabling or encouraging those people to overcome or minimise their disadvantage or to participate in activities or meeting their needs.

**positive  
discrimination**

Treating someone with a protected characteristic more favourably to counteract the effects of past discrimination. It is generally not lawful, although more favourable treatment of service users because of their disability is permitted if the service provider so wishes. Moreover, the duty to make reasonable adjustments may require a service provider to treat a service user more favourably if that is needed to avoid a disadvantage.

**pregnancy and  
maternity**

Pregnancy is the condition of being pregnant or expecting a baby. In the non-work context, protection against maternity discrimination is for 26 weeks after giving birth, and this includes treating a woman unfavourably because she is breastfeeding.

**principal**

In the context used in this Guide, where a service provider uses an agent, the service provider is the **principal**.

**private disposals**

When an owner-occupier disposes of property (i.e. sells or leases etc.) without using an estate agent or publishing an advert in connection with the 'disposal'.

**procurement**

The term used in relation to the range of goods and services a public body or authority requires and delivers. It includes sourcing and appointment of a service provider and the subsequent management of the goods and services being provided.

**professional  
organisations**

A body of persons engaged in the same profession, formed usually to provide advice, maintain standards, and represent the profession in discussions with other bodies about professional concerns.

**proportionate**

This refers to measures or actions that are appropriate and necessary. Whether something is proportionate in the circumstances will be a question of fact and will involve weighing up the discriminatory impact of the action against the reasons for it, and asking if there is any other way of achieving the aim of the action.

<b>protected characteristics</b>	These are the grounds upon which discrimination is unlawful. The characteristics are: age, disability, gender reassignment, marriage and civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity, race, religion or belief, sex and sexual orientation.
<b>provision, criterion or practice</b>	Identifying a provision, criterion or practice is key to establishing <b>indirect discrimination</b> . It can include, for example, any formal or informal policies, decisions, rules, practices, arrangements, criteria, conditions, prerequisites or qualifications.
<b>public authority</b>	For the purposes of this Guidance a 'public authority' means government departments, local authorities, courts and tribunals, health authorities and hospitals, schools, prisons, and police.
<b>public bodies</b>	For the purpose of this Guidance public bodies includes public authorities (as above) as well as organisations which have a role in the processes of national governments but are not a government department or part of one. They operate to a greater or lesser extent at arm's length from Ministers. For example, quangos, a non-departmental government body or an inspectorate. This is not an exhaustive list.
<b>public functions</b>	A 'public function' for the purposes of this Guidance is any act or activities of a public nature carried out by a public authority or public body or by the private or voluntary sectors which is not already covered by the other sections of the Act dealing with services, housing, education and employment. Specifically, in relation to the private and voluntary sectors, it will cover certain acts or activities carried out on behalf of the state. Examples of public functions include: determining frameworks for entitlement to benefits or services; law enforcement; receiving someone into prison or immigration detention facility; planning control; licensing; parking controls; trading standards; environmental health; regulatory functions; investigation of complaints; child protection. This is not an exhaustive list.
<b>public sector equality duty</b>	The duty on a public authority when carrying out its functions to have due regard to the need to eliminate unlawful discrimination and harassment, foster good relations and advance equality of opportunity.
<b>qualifications bodies</b>	An authority or body which can confer qualifications.

<b>questionnaire</b>	See <b>questions procedure</b> .
<b>questions procedure</b>	A procedure under the Equality Act whereby written pre-action questions are issued to the defendant, i.e. the person or organisation against whom a discrimination claim may be made. The questions are usually put onto a standard written form which is often called a 'questionnaire'. This procedure will be abolished shortly (see, section in the Guidance on 'questions procedure' for details).
<b>race</b>	Refers to the protected characteristic of race. It refers to a group of people defined by their race, colour, nationality (including citizenship), ethnic or national origins.
<b>reasonable adjustment</b>	See the <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b>
<b>reasonable steps</b>	See the <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b> .
<b>regulations</b>	Secondary legislation made under an Act of Parliament (or European legislation) setting out subsidiary matters which assist in the Act's implementation.
<b>religion or belief</b>	Religion has the meaning usually given to it but belief includes religious and philosophical beliefs including lack of belief (e.g. atheism). Generally, a belief should affect your life choices or the way you live for it to be included in the definition.
<b>religion or belief organisations</b>	An organisation founded on an ethos based on a religion or belief. Faith schools are one example of a religion or belief organisation. See <i>also</i> <b>religion or belief</b> .
<b>religious organisation</b>	See <b>religion or belief organisations</b> .
<b>separate services</b>	Services only provided for one sex.
<b>service complaint</b>	In the context of provision of services, this is a complaint about service delivery.
<b>service provider</b>	Someone (including an organisation) who provides services, goods or facilities to the general public or a section of it. See <i>also</i> <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .
<b>service users</b>	Those accessing or using a particular service. See <i>also</i> <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .
<b>services</b>	See <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .
<b>services, goods or</b>	See <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .

## **facilities**

<b>sex</b>	This is a protected characteristic. It refers to whether a person is a man or a woman (of any age).
<b>sexual harassment</b>	Any conduct of a sexual nature that is unwanted by the recipient, including verbal, non-verbal and physical behaviours, and which violates the victim's dignity or creates an intimidating, hostile, degrading or offensive environment for them.
<b>single-sex facilities</b>	Facilities which are only available to men or to women, the provision of which may be lawful under the Equality Act.
<b>single-sex services</b>	A service provided only to men or women in certain circumstances. It is not always discriminatory to provide single-sex services, for example provision of single-sex changing facilities in a leisure centre.
<b>small premises</b>	Premises are small if they are not normally sufficient to accommodate more than two other households (and no more than six people in addition to the owner-occupier and/or their relatives and/or close relations).
<b>Specific equality duties</b>	These are duties imposed on certain public authorities. They are designed to ensure that the better performance by a public authority of the public sector equality duty. The specific duties are different in England, Scotland and Wales. (See <i>also</i> <b>public sector equality duty</b> ).
<b>stakeholders</b>	People with an interest in a subject or issue who are likely to be affected by any decision relating to it and/or have responsibilities relating to it.
<b>substantial</b>	This word tends to come up most in connection with the definition of disability and the duty to make reasonable adjustments for disabled workers. The Equality Act says only that 'substantial' means more than minor or trivial.
<b>terms of employment</b>	The provisions of a person's contract of employment, whether provided for expressly in the contract itself or incorporated by statute, custom and practice or common law etc.
<b>textphone</b>	A type of telephone for Deaf or hard of hearing people which is attached to a keyboard and a screen on which the messages

sent and received are displayed.

<b>transsexual person</b>	A person who has the protected characteristic of gender reassignment. This may be a woman who has transitioned or is transitioning to be a man, or a man who has transitioned or is transitioning to be a woman. The law does not require a person to undergo a medical procedure to be recognised as a transsexual person. <del>Once a transsexual person has acquired a gender recognition certificate, it is probably the case that they should be treated entirely as in their acquired gender.</del>
<b>sexual orientation</b>	Whether a person's sexual attraction is towards their own sex, the opposite sex or to both sexes.
<b>UK Text Relay Service</b>	Text Relay is a national telephone relay service for Deaf, deafened, hard of hearing, deafblind and speech-impaired people. It lets them use a textphone to access any services that are available on standard telephone systems.
<b>unfavourably</b>	The term is used (instead of less favourable) where a comparator is not required to show that someone has been subjected to a detriment or disadvantage because of a protected characteristic – for example in relation to pregnancy and maternity discrimination, or <b>discrimination arising from disability</b> .
<b>victimisation</b>	Subjecting a person to a detriment because they have done a protected act or there is a belief that they have done a protected act i.e. bringing proceedings under the Equality Act; giving evidence or information in connection with proceedings under the Act; doing any other thing for the purposes or in connection with the Act; making an allegation that a person has contravened the Act; or making a relevant pay disclosure.
<b>victimise</b>	The act of victimisation
<b>vocational service</b>	A range of services to enable people to retain and gain paid employment and mainstream education.
<b>worker</b>	In this guide, 'worker' is used to refer to any person working for an employer, whether they are employed on a contract of employment (ie an ' <b>employee</b> ') or on a contract personally to do work, or more generally as a <b>contract worker</b> .



# Contacts

This publication and related equality and human rights resources are available from the Commission's website: [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com)

For advice, information or guidance on equality, discrimination or human rights issues, please contact the Equality Advisory and Support Service, a free and independent service.

Website [www.equalityadvisoryservice.com](http://www.equalityadvisoryservice.com)

Telephone 0808 800 0082

Textphone 0808 800 0084

Hours 09:00 to 20:00 (Monday to Friday)  
10:00 to 14:00 (Saturday)

Post FREEPOST Equality Advisory Support Service FPN4431

Questions and comments regarding this publication may be addressed to: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com). The Commission welcomes your feedback

## Alternative formats

This guide is available as a PDF file and as a Microsoft Word file from [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com). For information on accessing a Commission publication in an alternative format, please contact: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

© 2014 Equality and Human Rights Commission

First published January 2011. Last updated ~~September 2018~~ April 2014

ISBN 978-1-84206-571-6

# **What equality law means for your business**

# Contents

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Introduction.....</b>	<b>5</b>
The legal status of this guidance .....	6
<b>1. What equality law means for your business when you're providing goods, facilities or services to the public .....</b>	<b>7</b>
Who is this guide for? .....	7
What's in this guide.....	7
What else is in this guide .....	8
Making sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public .....	9
Protected characteristics.....	9
What is unlawful discrimination? .....	9
<b>Services for persons of particular age groups .....</b>	<b>15</b>
Particular types of business .....	19
Businesses selling products, such as shops and petrol stations.....	19
Banks and other financial services providers .....	22
Builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services .....	30
Estate agents, letting agents and property management companies.....	31
Gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers .....	35
Hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons .....	40
Providing services for people with a particular protected characteristic or separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women.....	41
Hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs.....	44
Theatres and other entertainment venues .....	48

Design and manufacture of goods .....	51
<b>2. Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres .....</b>	<b>53</b>
Staff behaviour.....	54
The building or other place where you deliver your services .....	54
Advertisements and marketing .....	55
Written information.....	57
Websites and internet services .....	58
Reasonable adjustments .....	59
Exceptions .....	60
Telephone access and call centres.....	61
<b>3. When you are responsible for what other people do.....</b>	<b>62</b>
When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation .....	62
How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible .....	64
How you can make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.....	65
Using written terms of employment for employees .....	65
When your workers or agents may be personally liable.....	66
What happens if the discrimination is done by a person who is not a worker of yours or your agent.....	67
What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law .....	67
What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law .....	69
What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation .....	69
<b>4. The duty to make reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people.....</b>	<b>70</b>
The three requirements of the duty.....	72
Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage? .....	76

Working out what needs to change .....	77
What is meant by 'reasonable' .....	78
The continuing duty on organisations .....	79
Who pays for reasonable adjustments? .....	80
When the duty is different .....	81
Associations .....	81
Rented premises or premises available to rent .....	82
Transport services .....	84
<b>5. What to do if someone says they've been discriminated against .....</b>	<b>85</b>
If someone complains directly to you .....	86
Alternative dispute resolution .....	87
The questions procedure .....	88
Where claims are brought .....	89
Time limits for bringing a claim .....	90
The standard and burden of proof .....	91
What the court can order you to do .....	91
More information about defending a court case .....	92
<b>6. Further sources of information and advice .....</b>	<b>93</b>
General advice and information .....	93
Business advice and information .....	94
Charities and voluntary organisations .....	95
Advice on specific issues .....	97
<b>7. Glossary .....</b>	<b>104</b>

# Introduction

This guide is one of a series written by the Equality and Human Rights Commission to explain what you must do to meet the requirements of equality law. These guides support the implementation of the Equality Act 2010. This Act brought together lots of different equality laws, many of which we have had for a long time. By doing this, the Act makes equality law simpler and easier to understand.

There are three guides giving advice on your responsibilities under equality law when providing goods, facilities and services, carrying out public functions or running an association. These are aimed at:

1. Associations, clubs and societies
2. Businesses
3. Voluntary and community sector organisations, including charities

We have produced a separate series of guides which explain what equality law means for you if you are providing education services, whether in a school or in further or higher education.

Other guides and alternative formats

We have also produced:

- A separate series of guides which explain what equality law means for you if you are an employer.
- Different guides for individual people who are using services, or working and who want to know their rights to equality.

If you require this guide in an alternative format and/or language please contact us to discuss your needs. Contact details are available at the end of the publication.

## The legal status of this guidance

This guidance applies to England, Scotland and Wales. It has been aligned with the Code of Practice on Services, Public Functions and Associations. Following this guidance should have the same effect as following the Code. In other words, if a person or an organisation who has duties under the Equality Act 2010's provisions on services, public functions and associations does what this guidance says they must do, it may help them to avoid an adverse decision by a court in proceedings brought under the Equality Act 2010.

This guide is based on equality law as it is at April 2014. Any future changes in the law will be reflected in further editions.

# 1. What equality law means for your business when you're providing goods, facilities or services to the public

## Who is this guide for?

This guide is for you if your business provides any goods, facilities or services to members of the public. When you do this, equality law applies to you.

It does not matter whether you give the service for free (for example, giving someone information about your paid-for services) or if you charge for it. It does not matter if you are set up as a sole trader, a partnership, a limited company or any other legal structure. The size of your business does not matter either. Equality law applies to you.

Equality law affects everyone responsible for running your business or who might do something on its behalf, including staff if you have them.

## What's in this guide

This guide tells you how you can avoid all the different types of unlawful discrimination. We give you an overview of how equality law applies to all businesses, and then we go on to look at particular issues that businesses providing goods, facilities or services in different sectors may need to think about when considering what equality law requires them to do.

We give examples of issues that may affect:

- businesses selling goods, such as shops and petrol stations
- banks and other financial services providers
- builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services
- estate agents, letting agents and property management companies
- gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers



- hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons
- hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs
- theatres and other entertainment venues
- designers and manufacturers of goods – who are only covered in specific circumstances.

If your business is not in this list, it does not mean that equality law does not apply to you. Reading this guide will help you and your business. Use it to work out how to apply what it says to your business.

### ***What else is in this guide***

This guide also contains the following sections, which are similar in each guide in the series and contain information you are likely to need to understand what we tell you about running a business in a way that meets the requirements of equality law:

- Advice on how to avoid discrimination in the way you – and your staff – behave and how you provide your services, whether that is face to face, at a particular place, using written materials, by the internet or over the telephone.
- Information about when you are responsible for what other people do, for example, staff who are working for you.
- Information about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people who are (or may want to become) your service users or clients.
- Advice on what to do if someone says they've been discriminated against.
- A Glossary containing a list of words and key ideas you need to understand this guide – all words highlighted in **bold** are in this list. They are highlighted the first time they are used in each section and sometimes on subsequent occasions.
- Information on where to find more advice and support.

Throughout the text, we give you some ideas on what you can do if you want to follow equality good practice. While good practice may mean doing more than equality law says you must do, many organisations find it useful in helping them to deliver better services. Sometimes equality law itself doesn't tell you exactly how to do what it says you must do, and you can use our good practice tips to help you.

## Making sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public

First, use this list to make sure you know what equality law says you must do.

### *Protected characteristics*

Make sure you know what is meant by:

- **age**
- **disability**
- **gender reassignment**
- **pregnancy and maternity (which includes breastfeeding)**
- **race**
- **religion or belief**
- **sex**
- **sexual orientation.**

These are known as **protected characteristics**.

### *What is unlawful discrimination?*

Unlawful discrimination can take a number of different forms:

- You must not treat a person worse because of one or more of their protected characteristics (this is called **direct discrimination**). However, when the treatment is because of the age of the person, it may be permissible if you can show that what you have done is **objectively justified**.

For example:

- A shop will not serve someone because of their ethnic origin.
- A nightclub charges a higher price for entry to a man because of their sex where the service provided to a woman is otherwise exactly the same.

- You must not do something to someone which has (or would have) a worse impact on them and on other people who share a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not share that characteristic. Unless you can show that what you have done is **objectively justified**, this will be what is called **indirect discrimination**. 'Doing something' can include making a decision, or applying a rule or way of doing things.

For example:

A shop decides to apply a 'no hats or other headgear' rule to customers. If this rule is applied in exactly the same way to every customer, Sikhs, Jews, Muslims and Rastafarians who may cover their heads as part of their religion will not be able to use the shop. Unless the shop can **objectively justify** using the rule, this will be indirect discrimination.

- You must not treat a disabled person **unfavourably** because of something connected to their disability where you cannot show that what you are doing is **objectively justified**. This only applies if you know or could **reasonably** have been expected to know that the person is a disabled person. This is called discrimination arising from disability.

For example:

A shop has a 'no dogs' rule. If the shop bars a disabled person who uses an assistance dog, not because of their disability but because they have a dog with them, this would be discrimination arising from disability unless the shop can objectively justify what it has done.

The required knowledge is of the facts of the person's disability but a service provider does not also need to realise that those particular facts are likely to meet the legal definition of disability.

- You must not treat a person worse than someone else because they are **associated with** a person who has a protected characteristic.

For example:

A restaurant refuses to serve a customer who has a disabled child with them, but serves other parents who have their children with them.

- You must not treat a person worse because you incorrectly think they have a protected characteristic (**perception**).

Commented [1]: Again, I think a definition at first use is needed, and a caveat as discussed.

For example:

A member of staff in a pub tells a woman that they will not serve her because they think she is a **transsexual person**. It is likely the woman has been unlawfully discriminated against because of gender reassignment, even though she is not a transsexual person.

- You must not treat a person badly or **victimise** them because they have complained about discrimination or helped someone else complain or done anything to uphold their own or someone else's equality law rights.

For example:

A customer complains that a member of staff in a café told her she was not allowed to breastfeed her baby except in the toilets. Because she has complained, the café tells her she is barred altogether. This is almost certainly victimisation.

- You must not **harass** a person.

For example:

A member of staff in a nightclub is verbally abusive to a customer in relation to a protected characteristic.

**Note:** Even where the behaviour does not come within the equality law definition of harassment, for example, because it is related to religion or belief or sexual orientation, it is likely still to be unlawful **direct discrimination** because you are giving the service to the person on worse terms than you would give someone who did not have the same protected characteristic.

In addition, to make sure that disabled people are able to use your services as far as is reasonable to the same standard as non-disabled people, you must make **reasonable adjustments**. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of **impairments** might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

For example:

A bank branch has a flight of steps up to its entrance but it is not permitted by the local authority to build a ramp because this would block the pavement. The bank installs a platform lift so that disabled people with mobility impairments can get into the branch. This is a reasonable adjustment.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

Where you used to provide services to a person, it will still be unlawful to discriminate against them in the ways described above if what you do arises out of and is closely connected to the relationship that used to exist between you and that person.

## **What does this mean for your business?**

Because of a protected characteristic, you and anyone working for you:

- Must not refuse to serve someone or refuse to take them on as a client.

For example:

- You must not refuse to serve a woman who is breastfeeding a baby.
- You must not say you will not take people with a particular religion or belief as a client.
- Must not stop serving or working for someone if you still serve or work for other customers or clients who do not have the same protected characteristic in the same circumstances.

For example:

- You must not stop offering home visits to disabled people that you find out have a mental health condition if you go on offering them to other clients. That is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.
- Must not give someone a service of a worse quality or in a worse way than you would usually provide the service.

For example:

You must not keep someone waiting for service twice as long as usual because of a protected characteristic.

- Must not give someone a service with worse terms than you would usually offer.

For example:

You must not charge someone with a particular protected characteristic a higher deposit when they hire something from you.

- Must not put them at any other disadvantage.

You can still tell your customers or clients what standards of behaviour you want from them - for example, behaving with respect towards your staff and to other customers.

Sometimes, how someone behaves may be linked to a protected characteristic.

If you set standards of behaviour for your customers or clients which have a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not have that characteristic, you need to make sure that you can **objectively justify** what you have done. Otherwise, it will be indirect discrimination.

If you do set standards of behaviour, you must make **reasonable adjustments** to the standards for disabled people and avoid **discrimination arising from disability**. You can read more about reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

For example:

A couple and their teenage child who has a learning disability sit down in a café. Because of her disability, the child speaks and laughs loudly. One of the staff tells the family they will have to leave if their child is not quiet, even though the parents explain why the child is making a noise. If the child's behaviour is not causing any significant difficulties for other customers or for staff, it would probably be hard for the café to **objectively justify** telling the family to leave (in other words, withdraw the service from them), so doing this is likely to be discrimination arising from disability and/or indirect discrimination because of the child's disability. The right approach would be for the staff first to make a reasonable adjustment to the standard they expected and only then to decide if the child's behaviour was still unacceptable (which is unlikely).

**Check out:** What does equality law mean for you when you're providing services to the public: staff, places, written information, websites, telephone access?

You can read more in Chapter 2 about:

- staff behaviour
- advertisements and marketing
- how people access services: face to face, at a particular place, using written materials, by the internet or over the phone.

**Check out:** When you are responsible for what other people do.

You can read more about when you are responsible for what other people do, such as staff working for you, in Chapter 3.

**Exceptions:** There are some exceptions to the general rules of equality law, when the law may apply differently in some circumstances. You can read more next about when these exceptions may apply. Check if any of them apply to your business or situation.

## **Do any of the exceptions in equality law apply to my business or situation?**

There are some exceptions to the general rules of equality law, when people's protected characteristics may be relevant to the goods, facilities or services you provide. For businesses, these are:

- Services for particular groups:
  - Services provided for people with a particular protected characteristic.
  - Services for persons of particular age groups.
  - Separate services for men and women or single-sex services.
- Where health and safety considerations apply to pregnant women.

As well as these exceptions, equality law allows you to treat disabled people more favourably than non-disabled people. The aim of the law in allowing this is to remove barriers that disabled people would otherwise face to accessing services.

For example:

- A hairdresser visits a disabled client at home when they do not usually provide home visits, as the client has a mobility impairment that makes the sinks at the salon unsuitable for washing their hair.
- A music venue gives two tickets for the price of one to disabled people who need to bring someone with them to assist them.

## Services for particular groups

There are limited and specific situations in which you can provide (or refuse to provide) all or some of your services to people based on a protected characteristic. These exceptions apply to any organisation which meets the strict tests.

### ***Services provided to people with a particular protected characteristic***

If you normally supply services only for people with a particular protected characteristic (such as women or people of African Caribbean descent), you can carry on providing the service the same way.

For example:

A butcher only sells meat from animals which have been slaughtered in a way that conforms to particular religious requirements (Halal or Kosher meat). The butcher does not have to sell non-Halal or non-Kosher meat, even though this means that Muslim and Jewish people are more likely to be customers than others. However, the butcher cannot refuse to sell the Halal or Kosher meat to customers who are not Muslim or Jewish.

You can refuse to provide the service to someone who does not have that characteristic if you reasonably think it is impracticable for you to provide them with the service.

You can also target your advertising or marketing at a group with particular protected characteristics, as long as you do not suggest you will not serve people with a particular characteristic (unless one of the exceptions applies). You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

## Services for persons of particular age groups

There are certain exceptions if you provide services to persons of particular age groups.

- You may provide concessions in respect of a service to persons of a particular age group, such as discounts for pensioners or schemes such as the young persons' railcard.
- You may provide holiday services to persons of a particular age group where an essential feature of the holiday is to bring together persons of that age and you clearly indicate this at the time you offer the holiday, such as SAGA or 18-30 holidays.
- Where the law restricts the supply of certain services by age (for example, the sale of alcohol, tobacco or fireworks), you may withhold such services from persons who appear to be younger than a particular age and cannot provide satisfactory proof of



their age, provided you have displayed signs notifying the public that you will ask for proof of age in this way.

- Finally, there are certain exceptions allowing owners of sites housing residential mobile homes that are occupied as permanent residences to restrict occupation of their land to persons over a particular age.

There is a further exception allowing businesses to take age into account when providing financial services, such as banking, credit, insurance, and personal pension services. However, where you undertake an assessment of risk for the purposes of providing a financial service, you may only take account of a person's age in so far as this is relevant to risk and where the information is obtained from a source that it is reasonable to rely on.

### ***Separate services for men and women and single-sex services***

You are allowed to provide separate services for men and women where providing a joint service (ie one where men and women are provided with exactly the same service) would not be as effective. You are also allowed to provide separate services for men and women in different ways or to a different level where:

- providing a joint service would not be as effective, and
- the extent to which the service is required by one sex makes it not reasonably practicable to provide the service except in the different ways or to the different level.

In each case, you need to be able to **objectively justify** what you are doing.

You are allowed to provide single-sex services (services just for men or just for women) where this is **objectively justified** and:

- only men or only women require the service, or
- there is joint provision for both sexes but that is not enough on its own, or
- if the service were provided for men and women jointly, it would not be as effective and the extent to which each sex requires the service makes it not reasonably practicable to provide separate services for each sex because of the extent to which the service is required by persons of each sex, or
- the services are provided in a hospital or other place where users need special care, supervision or attention (or in parts of such an establishment), or
- the services may be used by more than one person at the same time and a woman might reasonably object to the presence of a man (or vice versa), or
- the services may involve physical contact between a user and someone else and that other person may reasonably object if the user is of the opposite sex.

For example:

- At a commercial gym and swimming pool, women-only swimming sessions could be provided as well as mixed sessions.
- Separate services for men and women could be provided by a beauty therapist where intimate personal health or hygiene is involved.
- A healthcare provider can offer services only to men or only to women, such as particular types of health screening for conditions that only affect men or only affect women.

Generally, a business which is providing separate services or single-sex services should treat a **transsexual person** according to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the ~~physical sex recorded at birth they were born with~~), as it is unlawful to discriminate against someone because of gender reassignment. Although a business can exclude a transsexual person or provide them with a different service, this is only if it can **objectively justify** doing so.

A business may have a policy about providing its service to transsexual users, but this policy must still be applied on a case-by-case basis. It is necessary to balance the needs of the transsexual person for the service, and the disadvantage to them if they are refused access to it, against the needs of other users, and any disadvantage to them, if the transsexual person is allowed access. To do this may require discussion with service users (maintaining confidentiality for the transsexual service user). Care should be taken in each case to avoid a decision based on ignorance or prejudice.

Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so.

Transsexual people should not be routinely asked to produce their Gender Recognition Certificate (if they have one) as evidence of their legal sex. If a business requires proof of a person's legal sex, then their birth certificate should be sufficient confirmation.

Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes and therefore should not be excluded from single-sex services.

## Health and safety for pregnant women

You can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because you reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and you would do the same thing in relation to a person whose health and safety might be at risk because of a different physical condition.

For example:

- The owner of a fairground bumper-car ride displays a notice which states that the ride is unsuitable for people with back injuries. When they also refuse to allow a heavily pregnant woman to go on the ride, this is likely to be allowed because of this exception.
- A beauty therapist refuses a particular treatment to a pregnant woman which they would also refuse to someone who had a heart condition. This is likely to be allowed because of this exception.

### Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires

Equality good practice can win you new customers or clients, or help you to keep existing ones, because you are showing that you aim to treat everyone well. It can also help you to avoid court claims, because you have shown that you have done everything you could be expected to do to make sure unlawful discrimination does not happen.

This guide tells you what equality law says you must and must not do to avoid unlawful discrimination.

If you want to be sure you are doing this, it is a good idea to:

- use an **equality policy** to help you check that you have thought about equality in the way you plan what you do and how you do it
- give **equality training** to everyone in your business who deals with customers or clients, to make sure they know the right and wrong ways to behave.

You may want to target people with a particular protected characteristic through **positive action** if they are currently missing out on your services. To do this, you must show that people with a particular protected characteristic have a different need or a track record of disadvantage or low participation in an activity.

## Particular types of business

The next part of this guide gives examples of particular issues that may affect:

- businesses selling goods, such as shops and petrol stations
- banks and other financial services providers
- builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services
- estate agents, letting agents and property management companies
- gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers
- hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons
- hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs
- theatres and other entertainment venues
- designers and manufacturers of goods – who are only covered in specific circumstances.

Even if your business is not in this list, equality law still applies to you. Read this guide and work out how to apply what it says to your business. It will help you not only to avoid unlawful discrimination, but will often mean you provide a better service to a wide range of customers.

### ***Businesses selling products, such as shops and petrol stations***

Equality law applies to every business that provides goods, facilities or services to the public or a section of the public.

This includes any business, large or small, that is selling goods. This could be anything from somebody who sells cosmetics door-to-door through to a large supermarket or electrical retailer.

It also includes you if you sell something alongside another service, for example, you are a garage that sells cars as well as servicing cars for customers.

It doesn't matter whether your service is free, for example, a stall handing out free newspapers, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Also look at:

Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

For many shops, especially small shops, the biggest question will be what reasonable adjustments they need to make to make sure that disabled people who want to buy from them are able to.

What is reasonable will depend, among other considerations, on the size and nature of your business. Just because you cannot do everything does not mean it is alright to do nothing. You must think about what it is reasonable for you to change so that disabled people with a range of different impairments are able to buy your goods.

This might include changes to the **physical features** of your premises for people who have a mobility impairment or a visual impairment, and thinking about how you (and your staff, if you have any) communicate with people.

Because the adjustments and what is reasonable for a business to do depend on the circumstances, the following are examples, not an exhaustive list.

Even if a business can't afford things like a permanent ramp and automatic doors, or is refused planning permission (and considerations like these may be factors in deciding if an adjustment is reasonable for you to make), it could, for example:

- Keep a temporary ramp just inside the door; install a simple doorbell next to the door and put a typed notice in the shop window next to the bell saying 'if you require assistance, please ring this bell' and put other notices up on the front of the counter offering assistance.
- Explain to all staff the duty to make reasonable adjustments (a note about what this means could be kept behind the till). For example, greeting customers if staff notice they have a visual impairment and offering assistance, and being ready to open the door/set up the ramp for anyone who rings the bell.
- Spend a small amount of money on a portable induction loop (which is usually contained in a small box) to make it easier for customers who use hearing aids to hear what is said to them, and make sure staff keep the loop switched on and on the counter but know they can pick it up if they need to go with a customer to the shelves. Putting a notice about the loop on the door could mean winning extra customers.
- Make the shop's entrance a different colour from the surrounding shop front to assist customers with a visual impairment.

- Designate any parking spaces close to the shop entrance as for disabled customers and make sure that non-disabled customers are challenged if they park in them.
- Move display units at the entrance of a small shop which otherwise stop wheelchair users entering, provided the units could go somewhere else without any significant loss of selling space.
- Take special orders for items for disabled customers if the business would take them for non-disabled customers.

For example:

A disabled customer who has a visual impairment wishes to buy a large-print edition of a book from a bookshop. The bookshop does not stock large-print books (nor does equality law say it has to). However, the disabled customer asks the bookshop to order a large-print copy of the book. If the bookshop would usually take special orders from non-disabled customers, a refusal to accept the disabled customer's order is likely to be unlawful.

Even if your shop is small, it is unlikely to be alright to refuse to serve a disabled person, for example, by saying that a nearby larger shop can offer them a better service. However, depending on the nature and size of your business and the type of goods you sell, it may be possible for a reasonable adjustment to be made to change how you interact with the customer.

For example:

- If a shop cannot provide a fitting room suitable for a wheelchair user, it could ask a customer to buy the clothes and try them on at home, making it clear that it will refund their money without question if they decide to return the clothes within a certain period, whereas usually only faulty goods could be returned.
- In some circumstances, it may be acceptable for a shop to take goods out to a customer in the street, but this will very much depend on the nature of the business and if there are any alternative ways round the shop's lack of accessibility, such as taking goods to a customer's home for them to look at and make a choice. It would not be acceptable to discuss the sale in the street, where a customer was expected to provide any personal information which other people could overhear, if this is not something a non-disabled customer has to put up with, or if doing this involved any loss of dignity, for example, expecting someone to make a choice of underwear in the street. So do not assume that this is a possible reasonable adjustment for your shop and its staff.

Petrol stations must make reasonable adjustments too.

For example:

At a petrol station, the manager decides that an assistant will help disabled people use the petrol pumps on request. It places a prominent notice at the pumps advertising this and a bell to ring. All new staff are told what they have to do if the bell rings: go out to the pump to serve the customer, and deal with payment. A further step could be to offer to fetch any other goods that the customer wants from the shop. In this situation, staff training and attitudes are just as important as providing the bell. The reasonable adjustment will not have been properly put in place if the assistant fails to respond to the bell, delays for a long time, or is rude to the customer in carrying out the transaction because they resent the extra effort.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4 including how to work out what is reasonable.

## ***Banks and other financial services providers***

Equality law applies to financial services providers, including banks, insurance companies, building societies, credit card companies, loan companies, hire purchase companies and credit unions.

### **Possible issues for your business**

You must not **discriminate unlawfully** because of a **protected characteristic** when giving or refusing people access to financial services such as bank accounts, overdrafts, credit and debit cards, loans, mortgages and hire purchase agreements.

If you provide insurance, pensions or annuities, there are some differences in relation to disability. If you can meet a number of strict conditions, which are explained in detail in this guide, it may be possible for you to take this protected characteristic into account when making decisions, for example when setting premiums and benefits.

There is also a more general exception permitting age to be taken into account by businesses when providing financial services, which is also explained below.

## How people are treated when they use or want to use your services

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Also look at:

Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres

Remember, it doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, when a member of staff gives information to a customer, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

It is important to avoid making assumptions about people that may lead to discrimination because of a protected characteristic.

For example:

- A mortgage provider only gives mortgages to people who work full time, assuming that part-time workers won't be reliable at making payments. Although this condition would apply to both sexes, it is likely to adversely affect more women than men since more women work part time. The mortgage provider would have to **objectively justify** the condition to avoid its being **indirect discrimination**. The right sort of approach is to look at the person's income or employment history, not their full- or part-time working status.
- A disabled person who is a long-term patient in a psychiatric hospital wishes to open a bank account. The bank incorrectly assumes that because they are in a hospital they cannot manage their own affairs. It refuses to open an account unless it is provided with an enduring power of attorney. The bank continues with its refusal despite being provided with good evidence that the person has full capacity to manage her own affairs. This is the wrong approach. It is probably **direct discrimination** because of disability. A better approach is to accept the evidence that has been given.
- A transsexual woman is questioned very closely with extra security questions whenever she uses telephone banking services because the pitch of her voice is low. This would probably count as providing a service on worse terms. A better approach would be for the bank to train its staff not to make judgments about the identity of customers based on what they sound like.

It is important to avoid discrimination in the way in which records are kept and changes are made to people's personal information.



For example:

A transsexual woman is asked for a **Gender Recognition Certificate** (GRC) when she supplies supporting documentation of her new name and asks to have her records changed. It is not necessary for her to have a GRC to have the protected characteristic of gender reassignment. If the bank asks her for more proof than it would ask someone else who changed their name for another reason, this may amount to direct discrimination.

If you are a financial service provider, you need to think particularly about different communication needs that disabled people may have, and how to combine meeting these needs with the requirement of confidentiality. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's needs in this way may be a **reasonable adjustment**. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people at in Chapter 4.

For example:

- A bank has a policy not to accept calls from customers through a third party. This could amount to indirect discrimination against a disabled person with a learning disability who may use a support worker to call the bank. The right sort of approach is to make sure the customer's records show anyone who deals with them that they may be communicating using a support worker. This is also likely to be a reasonable adjustment.
- A credit union provides information on an audio CD about its services. A customer with a visual impairment can use the CD at home to decide whether to open an account. This is an example of the right sort of approach, where the credit union is making a reasonable adjustment.
- A person with a hearing impairment who lip-reads as their main form of communication wants a secured loan from a bank. In the initial stages, it might be reasonable for the bank to communicate with them by providing printed literature or information displayed on a computer screen. However, before a secured loan agreement is signed, this particular bank usually gives a borrower an oral explanation of its contents to make sure that the customer understands the implications of what they are agreeing to. At that stage it is likely to be the right thing for the bank to arrange for a qualified lip-speaker to be present (with the customer's consent) so that any complex aspects of the agreement can be fully explained and communicated.
- An independent financial adviser insists that a disabled person with a learning disability brings a relative with them to an appointment to carry out a financial review, despite the disabled person not wishing to do this. This may result in a breach of confidentiality for the disabled person, and would therefore probably be

providing a service on worse terms. A better approach is for the financial adviser to find an independent advocacy service to support them, which may also (depending on the circumstances) be a reasonable adjustment.

## Insurance

Insurance and similar financial products involving the assessment of risk include annuities, life insurance, buildings and contents insurance, accident insurance, travel insurance, payment protection insurance, mortgage protection insurance, health insurance and critical illness cover.

In general, an insurance provider must not discriminate against a person because of a protected characteristic in relation to providing them with insurance products or in the terms of the products themselves, for example, premiums and benefits.

Ways in which an insurance provider could be in breach of equality law by discriminating because of a protected characteristic include:

- Charging a higher premium to people with a protected characteristic or giving them lower benefits or refusing them insurance altogether, either because of the protected characteristic or because you apply a condition to the policy which has a worse impact on people with that protected characteristic and you cannot **objectively justify** this.

There is an exception allowing service providers to continue to use a person's age as a criterion in designing, pricing and offering financial services, which includes insurance services. Some exceptions may also apply to disability (see below). No exceptions apply to the other protected characteristics.

For example:

An insurance company always refuses insurance to people who give a caravan site as their address. A Gypsy applies to insure their caravan which is kept on one of these sites. The insurer refuses the policy. Unless the insurer can **objectively justify** this decision, this may be indirect discrimination because of race.

- Asking some people to produce more evidence or a different type of evidence to support an insurance claim, if this is because of a protected characteristic.

For example:

An insurance company asks a long-term UK resident who has a UK driving licence but who was born outside the UK (in other words, they have a different national origin) to produce additional proof of identity when they make a claim on their car insurance, whereas people who were born in the UK are only asked for their driving licence.

If an insurance company insisted that a man applying for life insurance takes an HIV test before they will give him life insurance because his application form discloses that he is gay by referring to his male partner, this would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of sexual orientation.

However, it may be necessary to ask for more evidence relating to a protected characteristic where this is relevant to the claim. For example, a claim against health insurance (which may relate to a person's disability) could require medical evidence.

### ***Existing contracts***

In relation to **insurance business**, contracts entered into before 1 October 2010 do not have to be changed unless they are renewed or reviewed after that date (other than a general review of pricing structure). If they are renewed or reviewed, they may need to be brought into line with the Equality Act 2010 so that they do not discriminate because of a protected characteristic except if permitted by the exceptions for age and disability considered below.

For example:

An existing life insurance policy which was taken out in 1989, and has not been subsequently renewed or reviewed, continues to be lawful and does not have to be altered to comply with equality law. If it is renewed after 1 October 2010, the policy must be altered if it would otherwise discriminate because of any of the protected characteristics except in line with the exceptions for age and disability listed below.

### ***Taking certain protected characteristics into account***

It may sometimes be possible for an insurance business provider to refuse cover to someone or offer cover on different terms because of age or disability.

Different tests apply for these two different protected characteristics.

#### ***Age***

An insurance business provider (and other service providers providing financial services) may continue to use a person's age as a criterion in designing, pricing and offering financial services products.

However, when it conducts an assessment of risk for the purpose of providing the financial service it must ensure that in so far as it involves a consideration of the customer's age:

- It is carried out by reference to information which is relevant to the assessment of risk, and
- The information is from a source on which it is reasonable to rely.

For example:

- A medical insurance provider could take account of a customer's age in pricing a health insurance policy where there exists a body of reliable medical evidence that supports a connection between the customer's age and the risk of developing medical conditions covered by the policy.
- However, it may not do so where the assessment of risk is based on untested assumptions, stereotypes or generalisations or evidence from an unreliable source.

The provider also must not behave towards customers in a way that could amount to **harassment** or **victimisation** relating to age.

#### ***Disability***

Providers of 'insurance business' can only justify treating disabled people (including people with a **past disability**) differently when providing them with insurance if:

- the different treatment is by reference to relevant information from a source on which it is reasonable for you to rely, and
- it is reasonable for you to treat the person differently.

This means it is important to have relevant information from a reliable source when making decisions about offering insurance services to a disabled person. Using untested assumptions, stereotypes or generalisations can lead to unlawful discrimination.

For example:

- Someone who was previously a disabled person because of a mental health condition is charged a higher premium for travel insurance because of a blanket exclusion policy, even though they have not had any recurrence of their condition for many years. The insurer does not have any information that the person's past condition involves a particular risk now. It is unlikely the insurer will be able to show that the different treatment is based on relevant information from a source on which it is reasonable to rely, and that it is reasonable to treat the person differently because of their past disability. Unless it can demonstrate this, the insurer must not charge higher premiums or refuse them insurance altogether.
- A disabled person being treated for cancer applies for a life insurance policy. The insurance provider refuses the application on the basis of a medical report from the person's doctor, which makes it clear that the prognosis is as yet far from certain. This decision is based on relevant information from a source on which it is likely to be reasonable to rely and it is also likely to be reasonable to treat the disabled person differently because of it.

## **Financial services provided by an employer as part of an employment package**

If insurance or a group personal pension is provided by an **employer** as part of an employment package, the employer rather than the financial services provider must avoid unlawful discrimination because of a protected characteristic.

There are also particular rules about occupational pensions provided by employers, which are treated as part of an employee's pay.

You can find more information about both these situations in the Equality and Human Rights Commission guide *What equality law means for you as an employer: pay and benefits*.

## ***Builders, other trades people and companies providing similar services***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public. This includes local trades people like builders, plumbers, locksmiths, electricians and gardeners.

It also includes larger companies who may specialise in particular areas of building work like heating engineering, replacement windows, loft conversions, conservatories and extensions.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, information about services which is provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

When you run a business like this, you will often have access to people's homes. This means you may have knowledge about a client's or customer's **protected characteristics** which you would not have without this access. It is important you do not use your knowledge in a way that puts your client or customer at a disadvantage, such as by breaching client confidentiality, if this would count as providing them with a worse service or on worse terms.

For example:

A plumber works on a radiator in a client's main bedroom and notices from clothing and toiletries that they are clearly in a same-sex relationship. The plumber tells their work colleagues, to the extent that the next time someone different arrives to work on the heating system, they treat the client in a hostile way. The first plumber would not have spoken about an opposite sex couple's living arrangements in the same way and it has led to the client receiving the service on worse terms, so what they have done may be unlawful discrimination because of sexual orientation. The right sort of approach is for the plumber to avoid commenting on the client's personal circumstances where these relate to a protected characteristic, and to respect client confidentiality in the same way that they would, for example, in relation to the security arrangements at a person's home.

You need to think particularly about different communication needs that disabled people may have. A failure to communicate or understand an instruction may lead to very expensive or dangerous mistakes. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's

needs in this way may be a **reasonable adjustment**. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

For example:

- A builder usually provides a written quotation before starting work. Instead, a disabled client who is visually impaired asks the builder to go through the quotation in detail while the client makes notes on their computer as a record for themselves of the quotation. Holding this meeting is likely to be a reasonable adjustment and, if so, this is an example of the right approach.
- A heating repair company installs an SMS alert system for customers needing emergency repairs to their heating systems. They do this so that their existing and potential deaf customers are able to benefit from their services as easily as other customers. This is an example of the right sort of thing to do.

## ***Estate agents, letting agents and property management companies***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public. This includes estate agents, letting agents and property management companies.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, information about properties which is provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Other issues you need to consider are:

- access to confidential information about a client's **protected characteristics**
- **reasonable adjustments** to remove barriers for disabled people
- instructions to discriminate
- managing premises.

### **Access to confidential information about a client's protected characteristics**

When you run an estate agency or similar business, you will have often have access to people's homes. This means you may have knowledge about a client's or customer's



protected characteristics which you would not have without this access. It is important you do not use your knowledge in a way that puts your client or customer at a disadvantage, such as by breaching client confidentiality, if this would count as providing them with a worse service or the same service on worse terms.

For example:

An estate agent visits a client's home to draw up the property details so the house can be put on the market. From letters about medical appointments pinned on a notice board, the estate agent becomes aware that the client is a disabled person who has multiple sclerosis. The estate agent mentions this to a colleague and when the client next contacts the office, the colleague takes the call and asks about their symptoms, which makes the client feel upset that their privacy has been invaded. Even though the colleague did not mean any harm, the client is receiving the service on worse terms than a non-disabled person who would not have been treated in this way and it is therefore possible that this is unlawful discrimination because of disability. The right sort of approach is for the estate agent to avoid commenting on the client's personal circumstances where these relate to a protected characteristic, and avoiding this sort of breach of client confidentiality.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

When you are acting for clients in letting and selling property, you need to think particularly about different communication and accessibility needs that disabled people may have. Depending on the circumstances, meeting people's needs in this way may be a reasonable adjustment. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

For example:

- An estate agent checks with potential purchasers how they would like to receive property particulars. This gives an opportunity for disabled people with a visual impairment to ask for them to be sent electronically. Providing the chance to request the information in a particular format and then sending the information in that format are examples of reasonable adjustments the estate agent has made.
- A letting agent works out of a first floor office without a lift. The agent's marketing material makes it clear that they will make home visits to potential clients who have a mobility impairment who would not otherwise be able to access their services. The letting agent has made a reasonable adjustment.

## Instructions to discriminate

As well as not unlawfully discriminating against a client yourself, you must not accept an **instruction to discriminate** from a property seller or landlord.

If you accept an instruction from a property seller or landlord to discriminate in disposing of housing premises (which includes letting or selling), this would be against equality law, and the person could bring a legal claim against you.

For example:

- A landlord asks a letting agent to say that their flat to let has been taken if a lesbian or gay couple ask about renting it. If the letting agent agrees, they would be just as liable as the landlord for direct discrimination because of sexual orientation.
- A property seller asks an estate agent to say that the asking price of a property has gone up if a person of a particular national or ethnic origin expresses interest in viewing the property. If the estate agent agrees, this would be direct discrimination because of race, and both the property owner and the estate agent could be taken to court by the would-be buyer.

## Managing premises

If you are managing premises as part of your business, whether those are residential or commercial premises, you must not unlawfully discriminate against, harass or victimise someone who occupies the property in the way you allow the person to use a benefit or facility associated with the property, by evicting the person or by otherwise treating them unfavourably.

For example:

- A property management company manages and controls a residential block of flats on behalf of the landlord-owner. The block has a basement swimming pool and a communal garden for use by the tenants. A disabled tenant with a severe disfigurement is told by the company that they can only use the swimming pool at restricted times because other tenants feel uncomfortable in their presence. This would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of disability and/or discrimination arising from disability.
- A property management company refuses to allow a lesbian tenant to use facilities which are available to other tenants, or deliberately neglects to inform her about facilities which are available for the use of other tenants, because she had previously made a claim of discrimination against the manager. This would almost certainly be victimisation.
- A property management company responds to requests for maintenance issues more slowly or less favourably for one tenant than similar requests from other tenants, because the tenant has a learning disability. This would almost certainly be direct discrimination because of disability in the management of premises.

You may in some circumstances be required to make reasonable adjustments to the premises you manage or the way you manage them to remove barriers for disabled people. You can read more about making reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

## ***Gyms, health clubs and sporting activity providers***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes sport and leisure related services, such as:

- leisure centres
- swimming pools
- tennis clubs and tennis courts
- golf clubs
- rugby, cricket and football clubs
- ice rinks
- riding schools and equestrian centres
- gyms
- health and fitness clubs
- rowing and sailing clubs
- adventure centres
- sporting venues.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, free swimming sessions in a swimming pool run on behalf of a local authority, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

### **Are you an association or a service provider?**

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are, in equality law, **associations**), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an activity
- allowing anyone to join your leisure club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee or if the service is free. If, for example, you allow a person to have a free trial session, you are still providing them with a service.

If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- Do you have more than 25 members and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to this is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider.

For example:

A private golf club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it opens its golf course, café and shop to members of the public on certain days of the week or when spectators attend to watch club competitions. If someone does not have to be a club member to take part in a competition, then the golf club is also providing competitors with a service.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your **members, associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Particular issues for you to think about are:

- whether, if you want to, you can provide separate services for men and women or a service for only men or only women
- access to changing rooms and other facilities
- what you say about what people can or must wear to take part in your activities
- whether you can put conditions on who takes part in your activities, based on people's **protected characteristics**.

## Providing separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women

If you want to provide **separate services** for men and women or a **single-sex service** for men or women only, then you need to be able to **objectively justify** providing your service in this way. You must meet other conditions as well, such as showing that a joint service would be less effective, or that men's needs and women's needs are different.

For example:

A gym restricts access to its small sauna to men at some times and women at other times. Each sex has access to a mixture of daytime and evening use. At the times when the opposite sex is excluded, the gym is providing a single-sex service for the sex which is allowed to use the sauna. The gym believes the restriction is **objectively justified** and can also show that the sauna may be used by more than one person and a woman might object to the presence of a man (or vice versa). It is likely that the provision of the service in this way will come within the exception.

You can read more about this in 'Separate services for men and women and single-sex services' at page 15.

## Access to changing rooms and other facilities

You may need to make **reasonable adjustments** to make sure that disabled people are able to change in the same privacy and comfort as non-disabled people.

For example:

The changing facilities in a women-only gym are located in a room that is only accessible by stairs. The gym owner suggests to disabled users of the gym with mobility impairments that they can change in a corner of the gym itself. This is unlikely to be a reasonable alternative method of making the service available, since it may significantly infringe upon people's dignity. However, providing an alternative private room to change in may be a reasonable adjustment.

You must also avoid discriminating against transsexual people. Treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the physical sex [recorded at their birth](#)~~they were born with~~) unless you can **objectively justify** treating them differently.

For example:

A clothes shop has separate changing areas for men and for women with individual cubicles. The shop concludes it would not be appropriate or necessary to exclude a transsexual woman from the female changing room as the privacy and decency of all users can be assured by the provision of the separate cubicles.

Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so.

~~Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes.~~

## What you say about what people can or must wear to take part in your activities

Obviously, sometimes you will require specialist or safety clothing or equipment to be worn by participants in your activities. If you make this a condition of participating in your activities, and a person says that they cannot comply with the condition because of a protected characteristic, and can show that the condition has a disproportionate impact on people who share that characteristic, you will need to **objectively justify** the condition you have put in place.

For example:

A riding stables says that all riders must wear a riding hat or helmet which meets a particular safety standard. This is because the approved helmet protects riders from serious head injury in the event of a fall. The riding stable refuses to exempt someone who usually keeps their head covered with a particular type of head covering for religious reasons. Provided the stables can **objectively justify** the refusal, this will not be unlawful **indirect discrimination** because of religion or belief, even though the requirement has a worse impact on the individual and others who share their protected characteristic.

If it is necessary to change what a disabled person wears to take part in your activities, you need to consider whether making this change amounts to a reasonable adjustment. You can read more about reasonable adjustments in Chapter 4.

## Whether you can put conditions on who takes part in your activities, based on people's protected characteristics

- **Health and safety and disabled people:** Make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk. Disabled people are entitled to make the

same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a service provider to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

- **Health and safety and pregnancy:** A service provider can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because they reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and they would do the same thing in relation to a person with a different physical condition.

For example:

A gym restricts pregnant women's access to its steam room because it has advice from its trade association that pregnant women may be at risk from the high temperatures. It also restricts access to the steam room for people with high blood pressure and heart conditions. This is likely to come within the exception.

- **Separate sporting competitions:** Separate sporting competitions can be organised for men and women where:
  - physical strength, stamina or physique are major factors in determining success or failure, and
  - one sex is generally at a disadvantage in comparison with the other.

Separate competition for girls and boys may or may not be allowed, depending on the age and stage of development of the children who will be competing. At some ages and in some sports, it is not possible to say that boys and girls have significant differences of physical strength or stamina or that one sex is at a disadvantage in comparison with the other. Only if it is possible to say this will separate competitions be allowed.

You must not restrict the participation of a transsexual person in such competitions unless this is strictly necessary to uphold fair or safe competition, but not otherwise. In other words, treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which they present (as opposed to the ~~physical~~ sex recorded at their birth~~they were born with~~) unless there is evidence that they have an unfair advantage or there would be a risk to the safety of competitors which might occur in some close contact sports.

Sports teams can continue to select on the basis of nationality, place of birth or residence if the competitor or team is representing a country, place, area or related association or because of the rules of the competition.



Where participants in a sport or other competitive activity (such as bridge or chess) are in general put at a disadvantage compared to persons of another age group by their physical or mental strength, agility, stamina, physique, mobility, maturity or manual dexterity, you can restrict participation by reference to age in so far as it is necessary to secure fair competition or the safety of competitors, to comply with the rules of a national or international competition, or to increase participation in that activity.

This exception will allow, for example:

- selection on the basis of age for national and international tournaments where the rules of the tournament in question require this.
- Under 21s football tournaments or veterans tennis leagues.

But will not allow:

- Age limits based only on historic, habitual or social reasons not related to securing fair competition or the safety of competitors, complying with the rules of a national or international competition, or increasing participation in the activity, which cannot otherwise be **objectively justified**.

## ***Hairdressers, barbers and beauty salons***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes hairdressers, barbers, beauty salons, spas and manicure services among others. This ranges from sole traders who visit people in their own homes to large national chains.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a free haircut provided to people willing to be models, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## **Possible issues for your business**

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

Particular issues for you to think about are:

- whether, if you want to, you can provide services for people with a particular protected characteristic, or separate services for men and women, or a service for only men or only women
- access to washbasins, changing rooms, treatment rooms and other facilities
- whether you can put conditions on who uses your services, based on people's **protected characteristics**.

## *Providing services for people with a particular protected characteristic or separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women*

### **Services for people with a particular protected characteristic**

If you normally supply services only for people with a particular protected characteristic (such as gay men or lesbians), you can carry on providing the service the same way.

You can refuse to provide the service to someone who does not have that characteristic if you reasonably think it is impracticable for you to provide them with the service.

For example:

A hairdresser provides African Caribbean hairdressing services. Equality law does not force the hairdresser to provide European-style hairdressing services. However, if a white European woman asks for her hair to be styled in a way that the hairdresser would provide to an African Caribbean woman, such as braiding, the hairdresser cannot refuse to do this unless the hairdresser reasonably believes it would be impracticable, for example, because of the length or nature of the person's hair.

You can also target your advertising or marketing at a group with particular protected characteristics, so long as you do not suggest you will not serve people with a particular characteristic (unless one of the exceptions applies). You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

### **Separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for only men or only women**

If you run a beauty-related business and want to provide separate services for men and women or a single-sex service for men or women only, then you need to be able to **objectively justify** providing your service in this way. You must meet other conditions as well, such as that a joint service would be less effective, or that men's needs and women's needs are different.

For example:

A beauty therapist who operates on her own and provides massages in clients' own homes only provides this service to women. She believes the restriction is **objectively justified** and it also involves physical contact between the client and herself, which is something she has a reasonable objection to. It is likely that the provision of the service in this way will come within the exception.

You can read more about this in 'Separate services for men and women and single-sex services' at page 15.

## Access to washbasins, treatment rooms, and other facilities

You need to consider what **reasonable adjustments** are needed to remove barriers to disabled people in using your services. This is not necessarily about **physical features** at your premises; you could adapt the way you provide your services.

For example:

A beauty salon usually carries out a facial for clients by asking them to lie on a high bed in a treatment room. A client who is a disabled person with a mobility impairment would not be able to get up onto the high bed. The salon decides that it will consider alternative ways of carrying out its services as a reasonable adjustment, such as carrying out the facial for a client sitting in a chair or lying on a lower couch if this is available. It advertises on its marketing material that it will make reasonable adjustments for disabled people, showing that it has thought in advance about the need for reasonable adjustments, rather than waiting for an individual client to ask to access the service.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

You must also avoid discriminating against transsexual people in accessing your services or using your facilities. Treat a transsexual person as belonging to the sex in which the transsexual person presents (as opposed to the ~~physical~~ sex ~~recorded at their birth~~ ~~they were born with~~) unless you can **objectively justify** treating them differently. Where a transsexual person is visually and for all practical purposes indistinguishable from someone of their preferred gender, they should normally be treated according to their acquired gender unless there are strong reasons not to do so. Make sure you and your staff take care to avoid a decision based on ignorance or prejudice, as this may lead to unlawful discrimination.

~~Where someone has a gender recognition certificate they should be treated in their acquired gender for all purposes.~~

## Whether you can put conditions on who uses your services, based on people's protected characteristics

- **Health and safety and disabled people:** Make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk. Disabled people are entitled to make the same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a **service provider** to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and

managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

For example:

A spa refuses to allow disabled people who are receiving chemotherapy for cancer to have aromatherapy massages. This is because the spa owner understands there is uncertainty about the interaction of aromatherapy oils and the drugs used in chemotherapy. A disabled person who is affected by the refusal says this is indirect discrimination because it stops her and other disabled people in the same position receiving the service. Provided the spa owner can **objectively justify** the refusal, this will not be unlawful discrimination because of disability. However, a reasonable adjustment might be to offer a similar massage using unscented oil instead.

- **Health and safety and pregnancy:** A service provider can refuse to provide a service to a pregnant woman, or set conditions on the service, because they reasonably believe that providing the service in the usual way would create a risk to the woman's health or safety, and they would do the same thing in relation to a person with a different physical condition.

For example:

A beauty salon states that some of its treatments are unsuitable for pregnant women and people with high blood pressure or heart conditions. Provided it reasonably believes that providing these treatments would create a risk to a pregnant woman's health and safety, the refusal would probably come within this exception.

## ***Hotels, restaurants, cafés and pubs***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes a wide range of different businesses and services. These include:

- hotels
- bed and breakfast establishments
- guest houses
- self-catering holidays
- hostels
- restaurants
- cafés
- bars and nightclubs
- public houses
- takeaway food establishments.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a takeaway food delivery service provided at no charge, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

- You may need to work out if you are an **association** (which is what equality law calls some organisations that describe themselves as clubs) or a **service provider**.
- You need to avoid unlawful discrimination if you set conditions on who you serve and the terms and conditions on which you serve them.
- Because your service is likely to be provided at a particular place, you need to consider **reasonable adjustments** to your premises or to the way you deliver your services.

## Are you an association or a service provider?

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are what equality law calls **associations**), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an event
- allowing anyone to join your dining club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee or if the service is free.

If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- do you have 25 or more **members** and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to that is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider. For example:

A private members' club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it opens its restaurant and function rooms to members of the public on certain days of the week.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your members or **associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members, associate members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## Deciding who to serve

If you decide who to serve and who not to serve based on a **protected characteristic**, you risk discriminating against your customers.

For example:

- A café owner must not ask a woman to leave their café because she is breastfeeding her baby.
- 'Ladies' nights' where only women receive free drinks, 'two-for-one' offers or free admission are almost certainly direct sex discrimination against men. The same would be true of any other offer which was restricted to people with a particular protected characteristic, except for disability or if the offer was an age-related concession.
- A hotel or bed and breakfast cannot refuse to give a shared bedroom to a gay or lesbian couple if they give a shared bedroom to opposite sex partners. Nor could they insist on them having a twin room if they would offer a double room to opposite sex partners, and there are double rooms available.
- A pub cannot refuse to serve a customer because they are a transsexual person or with a transsexual person. Nor should the transsexual person be given a worse standard of service, for example, by allowing other customers to make hostile remarks ~~or refusing them access to the toilets appropriate to the sex in which they present.~~
- A disabled person has epilepsy. The owner of a bar knows this and refuses to serve them because, he says, he is worried about other customers being disturbed if they have a seizure. This is likely to be **direct disability discrimination** and/or (less likely) **discrimination arising from disability**.
- A disabled person with a learning disability wishes to book a hotel room. The hotel receptionist pretends that all rooms are taken in order to refuse their booking because of their impairment. This is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.
- Waiting staff in a restaurant place a person with a severe facial disfigurement at a table out of sight of other customers, despite other tables being free, because they think other customers will find it embarrassing to look at the person. This is likely to be unlawful disability discrimination.

You can still tell customers what standards of behaviour you want from them.

However, sometimes how someone behaves may be linked to a protected characteristic.

If you set standards of behaviour for your customers or clients which have a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who do not have that characteristic, you need to make sure that you can **objectively justify** what you have done. Otherwise, it will be indirect discrimination.

If you do set standards of behaviour, you must make **reasonable adjustments** to them for disabled people and avoid **discrimination arising from disability**.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

If you run a hospitality business, you will need to make sure your premises are accessible to disabled people by making reasonable adjustments. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

Reasonable adjustments are not just about physical accessibility, although this is important for some disabled people, but can be about the way in which services are offered.

For example:

A hotel's reservations system allocates rooms on a first-come, first-served basis as guests arrive and register. The effect is that on some occasions the specially refurbished rooms that it has for disabled customers are allocated to non-disabled guests, and late-arriving disabled guests cannot be accommodated in those rooms. The hotel decides to change its reservation policy so that the accessible rooms are either reserved for disabled guests in advance or are allocated last of all. This is likely to be a reasonable adjustment for the hotel to have to make.



Adjustments only have to be made if they are reasonable, taking a range of factors into account, including the nature of the business.

For example:

A nightclub with low-level lighting is very unlikely to have to adjust the lighting to accommodate customers who are partially sighted if this would fundamentally change the atmosphere or ambience of the club. This is unlikely to be a reasonable adjustment.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

### ***Theatres and other entertainment venues***

Equality law applies to any business that provides goods, facilities or services to members of the public.

This includes a wide range of different businesses and services. Within this, it would include lots of different entertainment venues both large and small, such as:

- theatres
- cinemas
- music venues – everything from a large opera house through to a local jazz café
- comedy clubs
- arts festivals, including music and children's festivals.

This also applies to places that are not usually used for entertainment but have occasions when members of the public do use them for that purpose. For example, a church which holds lunchtime music recitals or an empty shop which is opened up for an arts festival.

It doesn't matter whether the service is free, for example, a free concert, or whether it must be paid for – it will still be covered by equality law.

## Possible issues for your business

First, use the information earlier in this chapter to make sure you know what equality law says you must do as a business providing goods, facilities or services to the public.

You may need to work out if you are an **association** or a **service provider**.

Because your activities take place at a particular place, you will need to make sure a venue is accessible to disabled people by making **reasonable adjustments**. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

## Are you an association or a service provider?

Even though you may describe yourself as a 'club' (and many clubs are what equality law calls associations), you are really a service provider if you are offering a service to any member of the public, for example, by:

- charging them an entry fee to watch an event
- allowing anyone to join your jazz club provided they pay for the service

even if the charge is described as a membership fee, or if the service is free. If, for example, you allow a person to watch a concert for free, you are still providing them with a service.

If you are not sure whether you are a service provider or an association, then ask yourself:

- Are there 25 or more **members** and is membership regulated by rules – for example, do all the members have to decide who becomes a new member?

If the answer to that is 'yes', then you should read the guide on associations instead.

It is possible to be both an association and a service provider.

For example:

A private members' club with rules regulating membership will be an association when it is dealing with its members and their guests, but a service provider if it allows members of the public to attend stand-up comedy events held in its function rooms.

If you are both an association and a service provider, the question you need to think about is whether your services are provided to the public or to your members, **associate members** and their **guests** or people who want to become members or guests.

If it is the public, then this is the right guide for you to read.

If it is your members or their guests or people who want to become members or guests, you should read the guide on associations instead.

## **Reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people**

Reasonable adjustments are not just about changes to **physical features** or the addition of **auxiliary aids** such as a hearing loop, although these can be important to some disabled people. Consider providing information (such as programmes and publicity material) in **alternative formats** and offering an additional ticket for free to a disabled person who needs to bring an assistant.

If your venue is of a type that means that you need to restrict services based on health and safety considerations, make sure that any action taken in relation to health or safety is proportionate to the risk.

Disabled people are entitled to make the same choices and to take the same risks within the same limits as other people. Health and safety law does not require you as a service provider to remove all conceivable risk, but to ensure that risk is properly appreciated, understood and managed. Don't make assumptions; instead, assess the person's situation, and consider reasonable adjustments to reduce any risks, your duty not to discriminate and, where appropriate, the disabled person's own views. There must be a balance between protecting against the risk and restricting disabled people from access to services.

For example:

A cinema manager turns away a wheelchair user because they assume, without checking, that the disabled person could be in danger in the event of a fire. Although the manager genuinely believes that refusing admission to wheelchair users is necessary in order not to endanger the health or safety of either the disabled person or other cinemagoers, they have not made enquiries as to whether there are adequate means of escape (which there are). The belief is therefore unlikely to be reasonably held. In these circumstances, the refusal of admission is unlikely to be justified. The right approach is for the manager to check the facts and to make a decision based upon them.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

## Design and manufacture of goods

If your business is as a designer or manufacturer of goods then equality law does not cover your business operations as they relate to designing or making goods.

You do not have to make changes to your physical products, packaging or instructions.

You can also target the advertising or marketing of your products at a group with particular protected characteristics. You can read more about advertising and marketing in Chapter 2.

### Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires

Even though you do not have to, it can be good business sense to make goods, packaging and instructions more accessible to all potential and existing customers.

For example:

- A manufacturer of bath and skincare products puts Braille labelling on its packaging and on the plastic bottles so blind customers who read Braille can tell products apart when using them. People for whom this makes a difference are more likely to buy these products.
- A manufacturer of doorbells makes a system that incorporates a portable wireless receiver. The receiver can be carried round the home to wherever the person is at the time and it rings when the doorbell is pressed. The manufacturer decides to add a bulb to the receiver which lights up when the doorbell is pressed. This means that people with a hearing impairment will find it useful as well as anyone who is, for example, listening to music with headphones on.

There are two ways you might be covered as a **service provider**:

- If you provide information which is more than just an advertisement, you may need to supply this in **alternative formats**, if doing this would be a reasonable adjustment, which it is may be, depending on the circumstances. You can read more about making **reasonable adjustments** to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.
- If you sell or give the goods you make directly to the public, then you will be covered by equality law as if you are a shop.

So, for example, if a company sells its products by mail order, over the internet or through a factory shop, then it will have duties under equality law as a service provider.

## Services and public functions

Some of the activities of services providers are called public functions. It is important to know whether you carry out any public functions because other laws will apply to you if you do.

In summary, a service provider will be carrying out public functions where its activities are done on behalf of a state body (like a local authority, prison, government department etc) and they are the sort of activities that only the state could carry out or ask a service provider to carry out on its behalf. Examples of public functions include: determining frameworks for entitlement to benefits or services; law enforcement; receiving someone into prison or immigration detention facility; planning control; licensing; parking controls; trading standards; environmental health; regulatory functions; investigation of complaints; child protection. This is not an exhaustive list.

It will often not matter whether what is being done is technically a service or a public function. This is because, in general, equality law applies in a very similar way to services and to public functions. However, public sector organisations and others who carry out public functions on their behalf have additional legal obligations.

Public sector organisations and service providers who carry out public functions for them, must have what the law calls 'due regard' to the need to eliminate the types of conduct which are prohibited under the Equality Act 2010 and discussed in this guide, and to advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between people who have particular protected characteristics and people who don't. This is called the 'public sector equality duty'. The three aims of the duty apply to all protected characteristics apart from marriage and civil partnership, which is only relevant to the first aim (eliminating discrimination). Thus a body subject to the duty must have due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination because of marriage or civil partnership in the context of employment, where it is prohibited under the Equality Act 2010.

In the case of service providers who are not public authorities, they are only subject to the public sector equality duty in respect of the public functions they carry out.

Some public authorities are also subject to what are known as specific equality duties. These require those public authorities to which they apply to take specific steps that are designed to enable them to better perform the public sector equality duty. The specific duties are different in England, Scotland and Wales.

In addition, public sector organisations and service providers which carry out public functions for them must also comply with the Human Rights Act 1998.

Further information about the public sector equality duties and the Human Rights Act is available from the Equality and Human Rights Commission.

## 2. Delivering services: staff, places, advertisements and marketing, written materials, websites, telephone services and call centres

Whether you run or work in a business, the public sector, a voluntary or community sector organisation or a club or association, the way you deliver your **services** matters.

You need to make sure that you do what equality law says you must do in relation to:

- the behaviour of staff who are dealing with customers, clients, service users, club members, associate members or **guests** or who are taking decisions about how you provide **goods**, **facilities** or **services** to the public or a section of the public
- the building or other place where you deliver your services if this is open to the public or a section of the public
- advertisements and marketing
- written materials, for example, information leaflets you provide as part of your service
- websites and internet services
- telephone access and call centres.

## Staff behaviour

How you and any staff who work for your organisation behave towards customers, clients, service users, members, associates or guests in relation to their **protected characteristics** will be at the heart of whether your organisation delivers **services** without unlawful discrimination, **harassment** or **victimisation** and whether it makes **reasonable adjustments** for disabled people.

### Equality good practice tip for how you and your staff should behave

Ideally, you want anyone who comes into contact with members of the public to treat everyone they come across with dignity and respect. This will help you provide good customer service (not just without unlawfully discriminating but more generally) and can make customers less likely to complain.

Tell your staff how to behave so that they do not discriminate against people because of a protected characteristic – and make sure you know what this means too. By doing this, you will reduce the risk that you will be held responsible for their behaviour.

Even if the person who has been discriminated against does not bring a legal case against your organisation, your reputation may suffer.

This does not just apply to situations where you and your staff are dealing directly with members of the public, but also to how your services are planned. This is the point at which a decision might be made, a rule might be applied or a way of doing things might be worked out which will affect how someone accesses your services. If this has a worse impact on people with a particular protected characteristic than on people who did not have that characteristic, then it will be **indirect discrimination** unless you are able to **objectively justify** the decision, rule or way of doing things.

So it is important that you and everyone who works for you knows how equality law applies to what you and they are doing.

For how to make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to them, see Chapter 3.

## The building or other place where you deliver your services

If you deliver your services at a particular place or places, such as a building or an open air venue, you must make sure that your customers, clients, service users, members, associate members or guests with a protected characteristic are not unlawfully

discriminated against, harassed or victimised in accessing your premises and you must make reasonable adjustments for disabled people.

You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

You should consider every aspect of your building or other premises, including:

- how people enter
- how they find their way around
- what signs you provide
- how people communicate with staff
- information you provide
- queuing systems, if you have them
- counters and checkouts, if you have them
- accessible toilet facilities.

The way your staff behave and assist your disabled customers can make a big difference to how accessible disabled people find your building and service.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

### **Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires**

You may find it helpful to make one person – which may be you – responsible for checking all these issues for your organisation.

You could make this part of your **equality policy**.

You could ask a range of disabled people – for example, by contacting local disabled people's organisations – what adjustments would make it easier for them to use your services. Then you could decide if the adjustments are reasonable adjustments for you to make.

## **Advertisements and marketing**

An advertisement includes every form of advertisement or notice or marketing material, whether aimed at members of the public or a specialised audience, including:



- in a newspaper or other publication
- by television or radio
- by display of notices
- signs
- labels
- show-cards or goods
- by distribution of samples
- circulars
- catalogues
- price lists or other material
- by exhibition of pictures
- three-dimensional models or filmed material.

Most written and other material published by you is likely to count as an advertisement if its aim is to tell customers or service users about a service.

You can target advertising material at a particular group of people, including a group who share a particular **protected characteristic**.

For example:

- A mortgage company advertises a product as particularly suitable for women by advertising that borrowers can take payment holidays if they take maternity leave.
- A bar advertises in a newspaper mostly bought by lesbian or gay women and gay men.
- A barber has flyers printed only advertising haircuts and listing prices for men.
- A community organisation makes it clear on its website that the lunch club it runs is aimed at people from a particular ethnic background.
- A sporting club advertises that particular sessions are targeted at introducing disabled people to its sport.

But, unless your services are covered by one of the exceptions to equality law, your advertisement must not tell people that, because of a particular protected characteristic,

they cannot use the service, or would not be welcome to use the service, or would receive worse terms in using the service.

For example:

- If someone advertising a service (for example, by putting a notice in a shop window) makes it clear in the advert that people from a particular ethnic group are not welcome as customers, this would amount to **direct discrimination** because of race against people who might have considered using the service but are deterred from doing so because of the advertisement.
- A flyer for a nightclub offering women free admission while men are charged for entry would probably be **unlawful**.
- An advertisement that said 'unsuitable for disabled people' would probably be unlawful.

However, you do not have to make **reasonable adjustments** in advertising your services.

For example:

If you advertise in a newspaper, you do not have to put out an equivalent advertisement on the radio just because disabled people with a visual impairment may not have been able to access the written advertisement.

### Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires

Even though you do not have to make reasonable adjustments when you are advertising your services, you may want to think about advertising in ways that will be accessible to disabled people with a range of impairments, such as Easy Read information for people with a learning disability. Doing this will help more people to access your services.

## Written information

When you provide written information as part of your service, you must not discriminate against, harass or victimise people because of a protected characteristic in:

- what the information itself says
- the way it is provided.

When you provide written information as part of your service, think about providing it **in alternative formats**, such as in Braille, on CD, or electronically, for disabled people who need the information in this form. Although it depends on your circumstances, this is likely to be a **reasonable adjustment** which you must make. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

For example:

- A café whose menu does not often change provides menus in Braille and large print so that customers with different visual impairments can independently use the menu.
- A restaurant changes its menus daily. Because of this, it considers that it is not practicable to provide menus in alternative formats, such as Braille. However, its staff spend a little time reading aloud the menu for blind customers, and the restaurant ensures that there is a large-print copy available.
- A community organisation providing health advice produces its leaflets in a range of alternative formats.

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4.

## Websites and internet services

If you provide services through a website – such as online shopping, direct marketing or advertising – you are known as an **Information Society Service Provider (ISSP)**.

This applies whether you have a one-page website which you maintain yourself or a very sophisticated website maintained by a professional web design company, and covers anything in between.

If someone believes that they have been discriminated against by an ISSP, and the ISSP is established in the UK, they can bring a claim in the UK courts against the UK-based ISSP even if the person is not in the UK, so long as they are in a European Economic Area (EEA) member state.

As an ISSP, you must make sure:

- That you do not allow discriminatory advertisements and information to appear on your website (whatever the advertisement is for).

For example:

- A local newspaper accepts an advertisement which says that jobs at a particular company are only open to people of a particular ethnic or national origin. The newspaper puts it on its website. The advertisement **directly discriminates** because of race, and the newspaper as well as the advertiser may be liable for discrimination: the advertiser as an **employer** and the newspaper as an ISSP.
- That you do not accept requests for the placing of information that unlawfully discriminates against people because of a **protected characteristic** in using a service.

For example:

- An online holiday company established in the UK refuses to take bookings for shared accommodation from same-sex couples. A lesbian or gay couple could bring a claim for direct discrimination because of sexual orientation in the British courts regardless of whether the couple were in the UK or another EEA member state.
- That you make reasonable adjustments to make sure that your website is accessible to disabled people.

## ***Reasonable adjustments***

Where this is a reasonable adjustment (and, as with other written information, it is likely to be), your website must be accessible to all users – this will include, for example:

- people with visual impairments, who use text-to-speech software
- people with manual dexterity impairments, who cannot use a mouse
- people with dyslexia and learning difficulties.

You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

The Royal National Institute of Blind People provides comprehensive information about web accessibility for disabled people with a range of impairments at:  
[http://www.rnib.org.uk/professionals/webaccessibility/Pages/web\\_accessibility.aspx](http://www.rnib.org.uk/professionals/webaccessibility/Pages/web_accessibility.aspx)

You can read more about making reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people in Chapter 4, including how you can work out what is reasonable in your circumstances.

### **Equality good practice: what you can do if you want to do more than equality law requires**

If, in your particular circumstances, it is not a reasonable adjustment for you to make all the adjustments necessary to make your website fully accessible to as many people as possible, you could make as many changes as possible to ensure good customer service. This will make it easier for everyone to use your website and mean more people can buy your products or learn about your services.

### **Exceptions**

Where your role is a limited one – for example, you are only temporarily storing information, and not initiating the transmission, selecting the recipient or selecting or modifying the information in the transmission – you are excused from the responsibilities of an **ISSP**. This excludes, for example, websites that temporarily transmit or store messages between users.

If an ISSP is not based in the UK, then the laws of the country where it is based will apply to it, rather than UK equality law.

For example:

An online retailer, which provides tickets to major sporting events, offers discounts to large groups of men but not women when booking hospitality packages for a football tournament. The online retailer is established in Germany so in this instance a case of direct discrimination because of sex would have to be brought in the German courts regardless of whether the person complaining was in the UK or another EEA member state.

## Telephone access and call centres

You may provide services over the telephone as a main activity – for example, providing a telephone order line for the purchase of goods – or you may have a telephone service as part of your service, for example, telephone banking, or enquiry lines via a call centre.

When you provide telephone information as part of your service, you must not discriminate against, harass or victimise people because of a protected characteristic in:

- what is said when a call is answered
- the way the service is provided.

When you provide services over the telephone, you must make reasonable adjustments for disabled people who would otherwise face a barrier to accessing the service. If it is a reasonable adjustment to provide the service in a different way, then you must do it. You cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance about what people with a range of impairments might reasonably need.

For example:

- A call centre makes sure that it has a textphone to accept calls from people with a hearing impairment, as well as allowing calls to be made through a third-party interpreter.
- A community organisation offers 'live chat' with its helpline via the internet.
- A small business which offers goods for sale by phone includes an email address and mobile phone number for SMS text messaging in its marketing information and makes it clear that orders will be accepted by these methods as well as by phone.

However, if an individual disabled person asks for an adjustment that you haven't yet considered to enable them to use your service, you will need to make the adjustment if it is reasonable for you to do so.

### 3. When you are responsible for what other people do

It is not just how you personally behave that matters when you are running an organisation providing **goods**, **facilities** or **services** to the public or carrying out public functions.

If another person who is:

- employed by you, or
- carrying out your instructions (who the law calls your agent)

does something that is unlawful discrimination, **harassment** or **victimisation**, you can be held legally responsible for what they have done.

This part of the guide explains:

- When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.
- How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible.
- How you can make sure workers employed by you and your agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.
- When workers employed by you or your agents may be personally liable.
- What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law.
- What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law.
- What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation.

#### When you can be held legally responsible for someone else's unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation

If you use other people to provide services or carry out public functions for you, you are legally responsible for acts of discrimination, harassment and victimisation carried out by **workers** employed by you in the course of their employment.

You are also legally responsible as the 'principal' for the acts of your **agents** done with your authority. Your agent is someone you have instructed to do something on your behalf, but who is not a worker employed by you, even if you do not have a formal contract with them.

As long as:

- your worker was acting in the course of their employment – in other words, while they were doing their job, or
- your agent was acting within the general scope of your authority – in other words, while they were carrying out your instructions

it does not matter whether or not you:

- knew about, or
- approved of

what your worker or agent did.

For example:

- A shop assistant bars someone they know to be gay from the shop where they work because they are prejudiced against gay people. The person who has been barred can bring a case in court for unlawful discrimination because of sexual orientation against both the shop assistant and the person or company that owns the shop.
- A community organisation hires a consultant to devise a new plan for how the organisation delivers its services. The consultant acts on behalf of the organisation and in its name, both when dealing with internal staff and when dealing with external organisations. The effect of the consultant's plan is to stop some people with a particular protected characteristic accessing its services. A service user with that characteristic complains of unlawful **indirect discrimination**, saying that the new approach has a worse impact on them and other people who share the protected characteristic. The organisation is unable to **objectively justify** the approach. The consultant who made the decision which has resulted in indirect discrimination would be liable, as would the principal (in this case the organisation), which would be liable for what their agent (the consultant) has done.



However, you will not be held legally responsible if you can show that:

- you took **all reasonable steps** to prevent a worker employed by you acting unlawfully.
- an agent acted outside the scope of your authority (in other words, that they did something so different from what you asked them to do that they could no longer be thought of as acting on your behalf).

## How you can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible

You can reduce the risk that you will be held legally responsible for the behaviour of the people who work for you if you tell them how to behave so that they avoid unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

This does not just apply to situations where you and your staff are dealing face-to-face with other people when you are delivering your services, but also to how you plan what happens.

When you or your workers or agents are planning what happens to people you are delivering your services to, you need to make sure that your decisions, rules or ways of doing things do not cause:

- **direct discrimination**, or
- **indirect discrimination** that you cannot **objectively justify**, or
- **discrimination arising from disability** that you cannot **objectively justify**, or
- **harassment**

and that you have made reasonable adjustments for disabled people, which you can read more about in Chapter 4.

It is therefore important to make sure that your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing.

## How you can make sure your workers and agents know how equality law applies to what they are doing

Tell your workers and agents what equality law says about how they must and must not behave while they are working for you.

Below are some examples of reasonable steps you can take to prevent unlawful discrimination or harassment happening in your workplace:

- Telling your workers and agents about discrimination and harassment and that it is not acceptable when they start working for you – and checking from time to time that they remember what you told them, for example, by seeing if/how it has made a difference to how they behave. This could be a very simple checklist you talk them through, or you could give them this guide, or you could arrange for them to have **equality training**.
- Writing down the standards of behaviour you expect in an **equality policy**.
- Including a requirement about behaving in line with equality law in every worker's **terms of employment** or other contract, and making it clear that breaches of equality law will be treated as disciplinary matters or breaches of contract.

You can read more about equality training and equality policies in the Equality and Human Rights Commission guide *Good equality practice for employers: equality policies, equality training and monitoring*.

### Using written terms of employment for employees

Employment law says you must, as an employer, give every **employee** a written statement of the main terms of their employment. You could include a sentence in these written terms that tells the person working for you that they must meet the requirements of equality law, making it clear that a failure to do so will be a disciplinary offence.

Obviously, if you do this, it is important that you also tell the employee what it means. You could use an equality policy to do this, or you could just discuss it with them, or you could give them this guide to read. But it is important that they are clear on what equality law says they must and must not do, or you may be held legally responsible for what they do.

Remember, if the employee is a disabled person, it may be a reasonable adjustment to give them the information in a way that they can understand.

If you receive a complaint claiming unlawful discrimination in relation to your services, you can use the written terms to show that you have taken a reasonable step to prevent unlawful discrimination and harassment occurring. However, you will have to do more than this to actively prevent discrimination.

If someone does complain, you should investigate what has taken place and, if appropriate, you may need to discipline the person who has unlawfully discriminated against or harassed someone else, give them an informal or formal warning, provide training or even dismiss them; the action you take will obviously vary according to the nature of the breach and how serious it was.

If you do find that a worker employed by you has unlawfully discriminated against a service user, then look again at what you are telling your staff to make sure they know what equality law means for how they behave towards the people they are working with.

You can read more about what to do if someone says they've been discriminated against at in Chapter 5.

### Good practice tip for how you and your staff should behave

Ideally, you want anyone who works for you to treat everyone they come across with dignity and respect, including customers, clients or service users, members, associate members or guests. This will help you provide a good service (not just without discriminating but more generally).

If your staff do unlawfully discriminate against people using your services, your reputation may suffer, even if the person on the receiving end does not bring a legal case against you.

## When your workers or agents may be personally liable

A worker employed by you or your agent may be personally responsible for their own acts of discrimination, harassment or victimisation carried out during their employment or while acting with your authority. This applies where either:

- you are also liable as their employer or principal, or
- you would be responsible but you show that:
  - you took **all reasonable steps** to prevent your worker discriminating against, harassing or victimising someone, or
  - your agent acted outside the scope of your authority.

For example:

- Unknown to their employer, the receptionist in an estate agent refuses to give details of houses for rent to a client with a mental health condition. The estate agent has issued clear instructions to its staff about their obligations under equality law, has provided equality training, and regularly checks that staff are complying with the law. It is likely that the receptionist has acted unlawfully but that their employer will have a defence.

But there is an exception to this. A worker or agent will not be responsible if their employer or principal has told them that there is nothing wrong with what they are doing and the worker or agent reasonably believes this to be true.

It is a criminal offence, punishable by a fine, for an employer or principal to make a false statement which a worker employed by them or their agent relies upon to carry out an unlawful act.

## **What happens if the discrimination is done by a person who is not a worker of yours or your agent**

Usually you will not be responsible for discrimination, harassment or victimisation by someone other than your employee or agent, however, case law indicates that it is possible that they could be found to be legally responsible for failing to take action where you have some degree of control over a situation where there is a continuing course of offensive conduct, but you do not take action to prevent its recurrence even though you are aware of it happening.

## **What happens if a person instructs someone else to do something that is against equality law**

An employer or principal must not instruct, cause or induce a worker employed by them or their agent to discriminate against, harass or victimise another person, or to attempt to do so.

'Causing' or 'inducing' someone to do something can include situations where someone is made to do something or persuaded to do it, even if they were not directly instructed to do it.

Both:

- the person who receives the instruction or is caused or induced to discriminate against, harass or victimise, and
- the person who is on the receiving end of the discrimination, harassment or victimisation

have a claim against the person giving the instructions if they suffer loss or harm as a result of the instructing or causing or inducing of the discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

This applies whether or not the instruction is actually carried out.

## What happens if a person helps someone else to do something that is against equality law

A person must not help someone else carry out an act which the person helping knows is unlawful under equality law.

However, if the person helping has been told by the person they help that the act is lawful, and they reasonably believe this to be true, the person helping will not be legally responsible.

It is a criminal offence, punishable by a fine, to make a false statement which another person relies on to help to carry out an unlawful act.

## What happens if you try to stop equality law applying to a situation

You cannot stop equality law applying to a situation if it does in fact apply. For example, there is no point in making a statement in a contract with a client, customer or service user that equality law does not apply. The statement will not have any legal effect. That is, it will not be possible to enforce or rely on a term in a contract that tries to do this. This is the case even if the other person has stated they have understood the term and/or they have agreed to it.

For example:

A business gives a client a written contract to sign which includes a term saying that they cannot bring a claim under the Equality Act 2010. The business withdraws the service in circumstances which amount to unlawful discrimination. The term in the contract does not stop the client bringing a claim in court.

## 4. The duty to make reasonable adjustments to remove barriers for disabled people

Equality law recognises that bringing about equality for disabled people may mean changing the way in which services are delivered, providing extra equipment and/or the removal of **physical barriers**.

This is the **duty to make reasonable adjustments**.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments aims to make sure that a disabled person can use a service as close as it is reasonably possible to get to the standard usually offered to non-disabled people.

When the duty arises, you are under a positive and proactive duty to take steps to remove or prevent these obstacles.

If you are providing **goods, facilities or services** to the public or a section of the public, or carrying out **public functions**, or running an **association** and you find there are barriers to disabled people in the way you do things, then you must consider making adjustments (in other words, changes). If those adjustments are reasonable for you and your organisation to make, then you must make them.

The duty is 'anticipatory'. This means you cannot wait until a disabled person wants to use your services, but must think in advance (and on an ongoing basis) about what disabled people with a range of **impairments** might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

Many of the adjustments you can make will not be particularly expensive, and you are not required to do more than it is reasonable for you to do. What is reasonable for you to do depends, among other factors, on the size and nature of your organisation and the nature of the goods, facilities or services you provide.

If, however, a disabled person can show that there were barriers you should have identified and **reasonable adjustments** you could have made, they can bring a claim against you in court, and you may be ordered to pay them compensation as well as make the reasonable adjustments.

As well as being something you are required by equality law to do, making reasonable adjustments will help a wider range of people use your services.

Once you have made a reasonable adjustment, don't forget to tell people about it. For example, put up a sign at your premises, include it in information you publish (make sure you provide **alternative formats** if appropriate) and put it on your website. This is not just because it will bring more customers; it is an essential part of meeting the duty. If the adjustment is not reasonably apparent to disabled people, they may still think they cannot use your services and in some circumstances this could mean you have not met the duty.

For example:

An airport provides transfer by electric buggy between check-in and gates for passengers with mobility impairments. Prominent signs at the entrance to the arrival and departure halls and at check-in desks assist disabled passengers in accessing that service. If the notices are not put up, and no one informs disabled passengers who require them that they exist, the adjustment would not be effective. The duty would not be met by the mere fact that they were present in the airport if disabled people who needed them were not made aware that they were available.

The rest of this section looks at the detail of the duty and gives examples of the sorts of adjustments you could make. It looks at:

- The three requirements of the duty
- Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage?
- Working out what needs to change
- What is meant by 'reasonable'
- The continuing duty on organisations
- Who pays for reasonable adjustments?
- When the duty is different
  - Associations
  - Rented premises or premises available to rent
  - Transport



## The three requirements of the duty

The duty contains three requirements that apply in situations where a disabled person would otherwise be placed at a substantial disadvantage compared with people who are not disabled.

- The first requirement involves changing the way things are done (equality law talks about where the disabled service user is put at a substantial disadvantage by a **provision, criterion or practice** of the service provider).
- Does your organisation have rules or ways of doing things, whether written or unwritten that present barriers to disabled people?

A practice may have the effect of excluding disabled people from enjoying access to your services. Or it may create a barrier or hurdle that might put disabled people at a substantial disadvantage to access your services.

It might be reasonable for you to stop the practice completely, or to change it so that it no longer has that effect.

For example:

- A private club has a policy of refusing entry during the evening to male members who do not wear a shirt and tie. A disabled member who wishes to attend in the evening is unable to wear a tie because he has psoriasis (a severe skin complaint) of the face and neck. Unless the club is prepared to change its policy at least for this member, its effect is to exclude the disabled member from the club. This is likely to be an unlawful failure to make a reasonable adjustment.
- A shop receives feedback from a customer with facial scars from severe burns that the ways in which its staff interact with her have made her feel uncomfortable and failed to provide a helpful service. The retailer decides to introduce disability awareness training, with a particular emphasis on issues around disfigurement, to improve the customer service of its staff. This is likely to be a reasonable adjustment to make.

Ask yourself, for example:

- Could you be more flexible about where or how you provide your services? Could you or your staff change a policy, criterion or practice where this is needed to remove a barrier?
- Do you insist on particular forms of communication, such as putting requests in writing? Or particular proof of identity such as a driving licence?

In addition, where you provide information to customers or clients you must take steps to ensure that the information is provided in an accessible format.

- The second requirement involves making changes to overcome barriers created by the **physical features** of your premises, if these are open to the public or a section of the public.

Where a physical feature puts disabled people using a service at substantial disadvantage, you must take reasonable steps to:

- remove the feature
- alter it so that it no longer has that effect
- provide a reasonable means of avoiding the feature, or
- provide a reasonable alternative method of making the service available to disabled people.

It is better for you to look at removing or altering the physical feature or finding a way of avoiding it (such as replacing steps with a ramp or, if it is reasonable for you to do this, a lift) before you look at providing an alternative service. An alternative service may not give disabled people a similar level of service.

Exactly what kind of changes are needed will depend on the kind of barriers your premises present. You need to look at the whole of the premises that are open to the public or a section of the public, and may have to make more than one change.

For example:

- A pub improves the paths in its beer garden so that the outside space can be accessed by disabled customers with a mobility impairment or a visual impairment.
- A small shop paints its doorframe in a contrasting colour to assist customers with a visual impairment.
- A hairdressing salon moves product display stands from just inside its door to create a wider aisle which means that wheelchair users can use its services more easily.

Physical features include: steps, stairways, kerbs, exterior surfaces and paving, parking areas, building entrances and exits (including emergency escape routes), internal and external doors, gates, toilet and washing facilities, public facilities (such as telephones, counters or service desks), lighting and ventilation, lifts and escalators, floor coverings, signs, furniture, and temporary or movable items (such as equipment and display racks).

Physical features also include the size of premises (for example, the size of an airport where a clearly signed short route to departures might enable people with a mobility impairment to use the airport more easily, or of a shopping centre, where wheelchairs, buggies and extra staff to help shoppers find their way around are made available). This is not an exhaustive list.

Sometimes you will need to ask your landlord's permission to alter rented premises. Equality law gives service providers the right to do so even if the lease states that the alteration in question is prevented by the terms of the lease.

The landlord cannot withhold their consent unreasonably although they may put in place a condition, provided that it is reasonable to do so.

If you are not sure if you are allowed to change the physical features at your premises, but you think you need to do this as a reasonable adjustment, then you should get advice. There is a list of organisations who may be able to help you at the end of this guide.

The third requirement involves providing extra aids and services such as providing extra equipment or providing a different, or additional, service (which equality law calls **auxiliary aids** or **auxiliary services**). You must take reasonable steps to provide auxiliary aids or services if this would enable (or make it easier for) disabled people to make use of any of your services.

For example:

- A shop keeps a portable induction loop on its counter so conversations with staff can be heard more easily by disabled people who use hearing aids.
- A club records its handbook onto **audio CD for members with a visual impairment**, and sends out its newsletters by email as an audio file if members ask for this.
- An accountant offers to make a home visit to a client with a mobility impairment when usually clients would come to the accountant's premises.
- A leisure centre has a regular booking by a group of deaf people. The leisure centre makes sure that the members of staff who have had basic training in British Sign Language (BSL) are rostered to work on that day to make sure that the deaf customers get the same level of service that other people would expect.

The kind of equipment or service will depend very much on the individual disabled person and what your organisation does. However you may be able to think in advance about some things that will help particular groups of disabled people.

Technological solutions may be useful in overcoming communication barriers, but sometimes a person offering assistance will be what is needed.

For example:

- Asking a disabled person with a visual impairment if they would like assistance in finding goods in a shop or having information read to them.
- Taking the time to explain services to a disabled person with a learning disability.
- If someone is being asked to make a major decision, providing a disabled person who uses British Sign Language (BSL) with a BSL to English interpreter, if it is reasonable for the organisation to do this.

If you do provide equipment, the equipment must work and be maintained. It is also important that staff know how to use the equipment

The duty is slightly different for associations, in relation to management of premises, and for transport services. These differences are explained at the end of this section of the guide.

## Are disabled people at a substantial disadvantage?

The question you need to ask yourself is whether:

- the way you do things
- any physical feature of your premises, or
- the absence of an auxiliary aid or service

puts disabled people at a substantial disadvantage compared with people who are not disabled.

Anything that is more than minor or trivial is a substantial disadvantage.

If a substantial disadvantage does exist, then the duty to make reasonable adjustments arises.

The aim of the adjustments you make is to remove the substantial disadvantage.

But you only have to make adjustments that are reasonable for you to make.

### **Good practice tips for working out whether disabled people face a substantial disadvantage in using your services**

- Local disabled people's groups may be happy to help you work this out. Contact groups representing people with a range of impairments. Explain that you want to make reasonable adjustments, and ask if they can help.
- National organisations of disabled people may also have information available about the impact of different impairments.
- If your organisation is part of a group such as a local chamber of commerce, community and voluntary sector umbrella group or group of local clubs, then you could organise a joint approach and ask them to help you survey several organisations together and share good practice.
- If you belong to a national association, they may produce specialist advice on the sorts of barriers disabled people face in your sector, as well as the changes made by similar organisations to your own.
- You could commission an access audit of premises which the general public have access to.

## **Working out what needs to change**

If you look at the definition of disability, you will immediately realise that disabled people are a diverse group with different requirements. No single aspect of the way in which you deliver your services will create barriers for all disabled people, or, in most cases, for disabled people generally.

A practice, or a feature of your premises, which is a barrier for people with a particular impairment may present no difficulties for others with a different impairment.

Some barriers may affect some people with the same impairment differently.

For example:

People with a visual impairment who use assistance dogs will be prevented from using services with a 'no dogs' policy, whereas visually impaired people who do not use assistance dogs will not be affected by this policy. The service provider must think about the needs of both groups.

Remember, the duty is a duty to disabled people in general. You must make reasonable adjustments even if you do not know that a particular customer, client, service user or member is a disabled person or even if you believe that you currently have no disabled customers, clients, service users or members.

On the other hand, once you are aware of the requirements of a particular disabled person who uses or seeks to use your services, it might then be reasonable for you to take a particular step to meet these requirements. This is especially so where someone has pointed out the difficulty that they face in accessing services, or has suggested a reasonable solution to that difficulty.

You are not expected to anticipate the needs of every individual who may use their service. You are required to think about and take reasonable steps to overcome features that may create a disadvantage for people with particular kinds of impairments – for example, people with visual impairments hearing impairments, mobility impairments, learning disabilities and mental health conditions.

## What is meant by ‘reasonable’

You only have to do what is reasonable.

When deciding whether an adjustment is reasonable you can consider:

- how effective the change will be in assisting disabled people in general or a particular customer, client, service user or member
- whether it can actually be done
- the cost, and
- your organisation's resources and size.

Your overall aim should be, as far as possible, to remove any disadvantage faced by disabled people.

You can consider whether an adjustment is practicable. The easier an adjustment is, the more likely it is to be reasonable. However, just because something is difficult doesn't mean it can't also be reasonable. You need to balance this against other factors.

If an adjustment costs little or nothing and is not disruptive, it would be reasonable unless some other factor (such as impracticality or lack of effectiveness) made it unreasonable.

Your size and resources are another factor. If an adjustment costs a significant amount, it is more likely to be reasonable for you to make it if you have substantial financial resources. Your organisation's resources must be looked at across your whole organisation, not just for the branch or section that provides the particular service.

This is an issue which you have to balance against the other factors.

In changing policies, criteria or practices, you do not have to change the basic nature of the service you offer.

For example:

- An association which exists to taste wine does not have to hold soft drink tastings when a member's disability prevents them drinking alcohol.
- Just because some of its treatments may be unsuitable for some disabled people, such as people undergoing chemotherapy for cancer, a beauty salon does not have to stop offering certain treatments altogether.

If, having taken all of the relevant issues into account, you decide that an adjustment is reasonable then you must make it happen.

## The continuing duty on organisations

The duty to make reasonable adjustments is a continuing duty. You should keep the duty and the ways you are meeting the duty under regular review in light of your experience with disabled people wishing to access your services. It is not something that needs simply to be considered once and once only, and then forgotten. What was originally a reasonable step to take might no longer be sufficient, and the provision of further or different adjustments might then have to be considered.

For example:

A large sports complex amends its 'no dogs' policy to allow entry to assistance dogs. It offers assistance dog users a tour of the complex to acquaint them with routes. This is likely to be a reasonable step for it to have to take at this stage. However, the complex then starts building work and this encroaches on paths within the complex, making it difficult for assistance dog users to negotiate their way around. Offering an initial tour is therefore no longer an effective adjustment as it does not make the complex accessible to assistance dog users. The service provider therefore decides to offer assistance dog users appropriate additional assistance from staff while the building work is being undertaken. This is likely to be a reasonable step for the service provider to have to take in the circumstances then existing.



Equally, a step that might previously have been an unreasonable one for a service provider to have to take could subsequently become a reasonable step in light of changed circumstances. For example, technological developments may provide new or better solutions to the problems of inaccessible services.

For example:

A library has a small number of computers for the public to use. When the computers were originally installed, the library investigated the option of incorporating text-to-speech software for people with a visual impairment. It rejected the option because the software was very expensive and not particularly effective. It would not have been a reasonable step for the library to have to take at that stage. The library proposes to replace the computers. It makes enquiries and establishes that text-to-speech software is now efficient and within the library's budget. The library decides to install the software on the replacement computers. This is likely to be a reasonable step for the library to have to take at this time.

## Who pays for reasonable adjustments?

If an adjustment is reasonable, you must pay for it. You are not allowed to ask a disabled person to pay for it, even if you have made it in response to their request and even if it has cost you extra to provide it.

For example:

A guest house has installed an audio-visual fire alarm in one of its guest bedrooms in order to accommodate visitors with a sensory impairment. In order to recover the costs of this installation, the landlady charges disabled guests a higher daily charge for that room, although it is otherwise identical to other bedrooms. This increased charge is unlikely to be within the law.

Even if you charge other people for a service, such as delivering something to their home, if the reason you are providing the service to a disabled person is as a reasonable adjustment, you must not charge the disabled person for it. But if the disabled person is using the service in exactly the same way as other customers, clients, service users or members, then you can charge them the same as you charge other people.

For example:

A wine merchant runs an online shopping service and charges all customers for home delivery. Its customers include disabled people with mobility impairments. Since this online service does not create a substantial disadvantage for disabled people with mobility impairments wishing to use it, home delivery, in these

circumstances, will not be a reasonable adjustment that the wine merchant has to make. Therefore, the wine merchant can charge disabled customers in the same way as other customers for this service.

However, another wine merchant has a shop which is inaccessible to disabled people with mobility impairments. Home delivery in these circumstances might be a reasonable adjustment for the wine merchant to have to make for these customers. The wine merchant could not then charge such customers for home delivery, even though it charges other customers for home delivery.

## When the duty is different

### *Associations*

The aim of reasonable adjustments is to make sure that disabled people are able to join an association or use its services as far as is reasonably possible to the same standard usually offered to non-disabled people.

An association does not just have to think about reasonable adjustments for disabled people who are already members, associate members or guests, but also to disabled people who are:

- seeking or might wish to become members, or
- are likely to become guests.

This means the association must think in advance about what disabled people with a range of impairments might reasonably need, such as people who have a visual impairment, a hearing impairment, a mobility impairment or a learning disability.

If it is the **physical features** of a building the association occupies or is using that put disabled people at a substantial disadvantage, the association must either:

- make reasonable adjustments to avoid the disadvantage, or
- find a reasonable alternative way of providing members, associate members and guests (and prospective members and guests) with the same access to membership and to its services.

Sometimes a reasonable adjustment may involve providing disabled people with an alternative way of using the service, which involves some level of inconvenience or segregation. However, the best kind of reasonable adjustment is one which enables disabled people to access the service in much the same way as non-disabled people. Indeed, if there is an adjustment which can reasonably be made which avoids segregation or inconvenience, then an adjustment which entails segregation or inconvenience may not be considered a reasonable adjustment at all.

Where meetings take place in a member's or associate member's home, then reasonable adjustments do not have to be made to **physical features** to make it accessible for a member who is a disabled person and for whom the physical features of the meeting place present a barrier to their attending the meeting.

But it may be a reasonable adjustment to hold the meeting at an **accessible venue**.

For example:

A cycling club has 30 members and no premises of its own. Instead members meet in the leader's house once a year for their AGM. This has no suitable access for a disabled member of the club, an amputee who uses a wheelchair. (The member uses a specially adapted tandem when cycling.) As a reasonable adjustment, the club decides to hold its meetings in a local sports hall which has suitable access.

Even if this is not a reasonable adjustment taking into account all the circumstances of the association, such as its size and resources, the association may want to consider whether as a matter of good practice it should change where it meets to an accessible venue.

### ***Rented premises or premises available to rent***

The duty to make reasonable adjustments applies to landlords and managers of rented premises or premises which are available to rent. This may include a landlord, a letting agency, a property management company, a management or residents' committee of a block of flats, and any other person who, in practice, has control over how the premises are let or managed. In this guide, these people are referred to as 'controllers of the premises'.

The letting of both commercial premises and houses for domestic use (subject to some exceptions) are covered. Letting includes sub-letting, and the granting of contractual licences to occupy premises (as opposed to an interest in the property which is granted by a lease). However, it does not include private sales (called **private disposals** in the Act) provided that an estate agent has not been used and no advert published. Similarly, it does not apply if the landlord is simply renting a room or rooms in a house with room for six people or less where the landlord or a relative or partner are still living. This is called the **small premises** exemption.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments in relation to the letting of premises is different from the usual duty to make reasonable adjustments relating to services.

First, it is not anticipatory. The duty only arises if the controller of the premises is requested to make an adjustment by a person to whom the premises are let or who wishes to rent the premises, or someone on their behalf. The request may not necessarily be made formally and the landlord should presume that they are under an obligation to make a reasonable adjustment if it is reasonable to assume that a request has been made.

For example:

A landlord is speaking to a prospective tenant on the telephone to arrange a meeting to sign a tenancy agreement. During the conversation, the tenant explains that they are visually impaired and find the print in the tenancy agreement too small. The tenant is identifying an impairment and it is likely that it would be reasonable to regard this as being a request for an auxiliary aid, such as a tenancy agreement in an alternative format. The tenant does not have to request a particular format for the landlord to have to consider an adjustment.

Second, there are just two requirements. These are:

- Providing auxiliary aids and services.
- Changing provisions, criteria or practices, including (once premises have been let) changing a term of the letting. For example, a 'no dogs' term in a lease entered into by a disabled person who uses an assistance dog.

There is no requirement to make any changes which would consist of or include the removal or alteration of a physical feature, which includes:

- any feature arising from the design or construction of a building
- any feature of any approach to, exit from or access to a building
- any fixtures or fittings in or on premises
- any other physical element or quality.

Physical features do not include furniture, furnishings, materials, equipment or other personal property.

Changes are unlikely to be treated as consisting of or including the alteration of a physical feature where they have only an incidental effect on a physical feature.

For example:

Attaching something to a physical feature, such as a wall, with a screw is unlikely to amount to an alteration of the physical feature. However, something more significant, such as installing a concrete ramp between a step and a path, is likely to amount to an alteration of a physical feature.

Things like the replacement or provision of any signs or notices, the replacement of any taps or door handles, the replacement, provision or adaptation of any doorbell or door entry system, changes to the colour of any surface (such as a wall or a door, for example)

do not count as physical features, so the duty to make reasonable adjustments could require changes to them.

The same tests apply when deciding if an adjustment is a reasonable adjustment:

- how effective the change will be in assisting the tenant or family member who needs the adjustment
- whether it can actually be done or not
- the cost
- the controller's resources and size.

Although a controller of premises is not required to alter physical features, there are specific rules about when a controller of premises must agree to tenants themselves making alterations to physical features of rented homes.

In future, there may also be specific rules about the process to be followed when requests are made for alterations to shared areas or 'common parts' of buildings and this guidance will be updated to reflect these changes.

## ***Transport services***

A transport provider's duty to make reasonable adjustments so that disabled people can use services applies to the way vehicles are operated, for example, by requiring train or station staff to assist a person with a mobility impairment in getting on and off a train, or by a bus driver telling a visually impaired person when they have reached their stop. It may require a service to be provided in a different way.

The duty to make reasonable adjustments also applies to adding auxiliary aids or equipment to existing vehicles, such as audio-visual passenger information, priority seating and contrasting handrails; these may be reasonable adjustments and, if so, the transport provider must provide them.

However, changes do not have to be made to physical features of existing land vehicles, except for some rental vehicles.

But some types of land vehicle must be replaced by a certain date with new vehicles, which do provide level access and a range of other equipment to make sure that they can be used by disabled people with a range of impairments.

Special provisions apply in relation to disability discrimination and air travel.

## 5. What to do if someone says they've been discriminated against

If a **customer, client, service user, member, associate member** or **guest** believes that you (or, if you have anyone else working for you, your **worker** or **agent**) have **unlawfully discriminated** against them, **harassed** or **victimised** them against equality law in relation to the **goods, facilities** or **services**, or **public functions** you provide, they may:

- Complain directly to you.
- Use someone else to help sort the situation out (alternative dispute resolution).
- Make a claim in court.

These are not alternatives, since the person complaining can still make a claim in court even if they first complained to you and/or used someone else to sort it out.

This part of this guide:

- looks at ways you can sort out the situation if they complain directly to you
- tells you where to find information about alternative dispute resolution (you can suggest this without waiting for the person complaining to suggest it)
- explains the questions procedure, which someone can use to find out more information from you if they think they may have been unlawfully discriminated against, harassed or victimised
- explains some key points about court procedures in discrimination cases relating to claims outside the workplace:
  - where claims are brought
  - time limits for bringing a claim
  - the standard and burden of proof
  - what the court can order you to do
- tells you where to find out more about defending a court case.

## If someone complains directly to you

If a customer, client, service user, member, associate or guest contacts you to say they have been discriminated against, you will obviously want to find out as much as possible about what has happened.

Consider the information given in this guide.

You will need to make a realistic assessment about whether what you and/or your workers and/or agents have done (or failed to do) amounts to unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation.

You may need to conduct an investigation into the complaint in order to form a view.

If you are an **employer**, and you think a complaint might need you to take disciplinary action against a worker employed by you, the Arbitration and Conciliation Service (Acas) publish guidance on discipline and grievance procedures.

If you feel you need to get more advice on whether what has happened was against equality law, you will find information on places where you can get help see the Further information and advice section.

If you decide that the person who complained was unlawfully discriminated against, harassed or victimised, you then need to decide the best way to solve the complaint.

If, after investigating what has happened, you decide:

- no unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation took place, or
- that you are not responsible for what has happened then tell the person who has complained.

You do not have to explain why you came to your conclusion, but it may help if you do. For example, they may decide that it is not worth taking their claim to court.

### Good practice tips on solving complaints

Defending a claim in court can be lengthy, expensive and draining, and it can have a damaging impact on the reputation of your organisation.

It is likely to be in everyone's interest to try to put things right before a claim is made to a court.

If you need to apologise to the person who has complained for the way they were treated or the way something was done, then do this.

If you need to change the way you do things so the same thing does not happen again, then do this.

Also:

- consider **equality training** for yourself and/or people working for you
- think about having an **equality policy**.

## Alternative dispute resolution

The first part of this section assumed you would do all the investigating and negotiating yourself. If you want to get help in sorting out a complaint about discrimination, you could try to get the person complaining to agree to what is usually called 'alternative dispute resolution' or ADR. ADR involves finding a way of sorting out the complaint without a formal court hearing. ADR techniques include mediation and conciliation.

You can find out more about ADR, whether any of the options might be suitable in your situation, what you have to do, and how much it might cost from the:

- **Equality Advisory Support Service (EASS)** (see *Further sources of information and advice* section).
- Scottish Government publication *Resolving Disputes Without Going To Court* if you are in Scotland).

For some sorts of cases mediation services are available through the courts service, and these can be used instead of waiting for a case to be heard by a judge. Mediation has the advantage of generally reducing cost and may successfully settle a claim without the inconvenience of a trial. You can find information about mediation services, including how to find mediators registered with the Civil Mediation Council for England and Wales here: <http://www.justice.gov.uk/courts/mediation> and for Scotland here:

<http://www.scottishmediation.org.uk/>



## ***The questions procedure***

It is good practice for someone who thinks that they may have experienced unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation under equality law to seek relevant information before issuing a formal claim. This can help them to decide if they have a valid claim or not.

How they can do this will depend on whether or not the claim is about something that happened before 6 April 2014.

### **Claims about events which happened before 6 April 2014**

If the claim is about something that happened before 6 April 2014, there is a set procedure which can be used to obtain information from you. It includes a set form called 'the questionnaire' or 'questions procedure' available at:

<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/discrimination-and-other-prohibited-conduct-complaints-questionnaire>

The form does not need to be used, provided the specified questions are adopted.

If you receive questions under this procedure, you are not legally required to reply or to answer the questions, but it may harm your case if you do not.

If you don't respond to the questionnaire within eight weeks of it being sent, the court can take that into account when making its judgment. The court can also take into account answers which are evasive or unclear.

There is an exception to this. The court cannot take the failure to answer into account if a person or organisation states that to give an answer could prejudice criminal proceedings and if it is reasonable to claim that it would. Most of the time, breaking equality law only leads to a claim in a civil court. Occasionally, breaking equality law can be punished by the criminal courts. In that situation, the person or organisation may be able to refuse to answer the questions if in answering they might incriminate themselves and if it is reasonable for them not to answer. If you think this might apply to you, you should get legal advice on what to do.

### **Claims about events which happened on or after 6 April 2014**

The questions procedure and the questionnaire form were abolished on 6 April 2014. For claims about events which took place on or after that date it will remain good practice for anyone who thinks that they may have experienced unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation under equality law to seek relevant information before issuing a formal claim.

The Government Equalities Office has issued a good practice guide to help individuals ask the most relevant and helpful questions and to assist you in responding to their questions. This can be found at:

<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/asking-and-responding-to-questions-of-discrimination-in-the-provision-of-goods-and-services-and-public-functions>.

That guidance makes it clear that a service provider should treat any such questions seriously and promptly and not ignore them. The questions and answers can form part of the evidence in a case brought under the Equality Act 2010.

## ***Key points about discrimination cases outside the workplace***

The key points this guide explains are:

- where claims are brought
- time limits for bringing a claim
- the standard and burden of proof
- what the court can order you to do.

## ***Where claims are brought***

If you are:

- a service provider, or
- carrying out public functions, or
- an association, including private clubs and political parties, or
- a premises provider, whether you provide housing or commercial premises, or
- in some circumstances, an education provider

then any claim against you that someone has been discriminated against (including that there has been a failure to make reasonable adjustments), harassed, or victimised on the basis of a **protected characteristic** will be brought against you in the County Court in England and Wales and in the Sheriff Court in Scotland.

If you are a **public authority**, a person who wishes to claim discrimination may also bring a claim for **judicial review** in the High Court in England and Wales or the Court of Session in Scotland. Different procedures and time limits apply to bringing such claims.

## *Time limits for bringing a claim*

If someone wants to bring a claim of unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation relating to equality law, they must bring it within six months of the act that they are complaining about.

If the person is complaining about behaviour over a period of time, then in certain circumstances the six months begins at the end of the period.

If the person is complaining about a failure to do something, for example, a failure to make **reasonable adjustments**, then the six months begins when the decision was made not to do it. If there is no solid evidence of a decision, then the decision is assumed to have been made either:

- when the person who failed to do the thing does something else which shows they don't intend to do it, or
- at the end of the time when they might reasonably have been expected to do the thing.

For example

A business sells goods over the internet. It is having its website redesigned. It looks into having its website made more accessible to disabled people and decides that doing this is a reasonable adjustment. The new website claims to be fully accessible. However, when the new website goes live, it turns out not to be any more accessible than the old one. The business does not do anything about this. A disabled person writes to the organisation and asks them to bring their website up to the standard they are claiming for it. The organisation does nothing. The time limit for bringing a claim is measured from the time when they might reasonably be expected to have made improvements to the website.

A court can hear a claim if it is brought outside this time limit if the court thinks that it would be 'just and equitable' (fair to both sides) for it to do this.

## *The standard and burden of proof*

The standard of proof in discrimination cases is the usual one in civil (non-criminal) cases. Each side must try to prove the facts of their case are true on the balance of probabilities, in other words, that it is more likely than not in the view of the court or tribunal that their version of events is true.

If someone is claiming unlawful discrimination, harassment or victimisation against you, then the burden of proof begins with them. They must prove enough facts from which the court can decide, in the absence of any other explanation, that the discrimination, harassment or victimisation has taken place.

Once they have done this, then, in the absence of any other explanation, the burden shifts onto you to show that you or someone whose actions or omissions you were responsible for did not discriminate, harass or victimise the person making the claim.

## *What the court can order you to do*

What the court can order if you lose your case is called 'a remedy'.

County Courts and Sheriff Courts hearing discrimination claims can grant any remedy that the High Court in England or Wales or the Court of Session in Scotland can grant for a civil wrong or in a claim for judicial review.

The main remedies available are:

- Damages (including compensation for injuries to feelings).
- An injunction in England or Wales or an interdict in Scotland) – this is an order made by the court to stop a person or organisation from acting in an unlawful way. Sometimes in England and Wales an injunction can be mandatory; that is, you have to do something (for example, you have to change a policy or make a reasonable adjustment). In Scotland an order for specific implement works in the same way.
- A declaration in England or Wales or a declarator in Scotland – this is a statement by the court which says that someone has been discriminated against.

In cases of **indirect discrimination**, if you can prove that you did not intend what you did to be discriminatory, the court must consider all of the remedies before looking at damages.

The court can also order you to pay the legal costs and expenses of the person bringing the claim. You would have to pay these on top of your own legal costs and expenses.

## More information about defending a court case

You can find out more about what to do if someone brings a court case against you from:

- In England and Wales: Her Majesty's Courts Service see the Further information and advice *section* for details.
- In Scotland: Scottish Courts Service see the Further information and advice section for details.

## 6. Further sources of information and advice

### General advice and information

#### Equality and Human Rights Commission

The Equality and Human Rights Commission is the independent advocate for equality and human rights in Britain. It aims to reduce inequality, eliminate discrimination, strengthen good relations between people, and promote and protect human rights. The Equality and Human Rights Commission helplines advise both individuals and organisations such as employers and service providers.

**Website:** [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com)

#### England

##### Manchester

Arndale House, The Arndale Centre,  
Manchester, M4 3AQ  
Telephone: 0161 829 8100  
Fax: 0161 829 8110  
Email: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

##### London

Fleetbank House,  
2-6 Salisbury Square,  
London EC4Y 8JX  
Telephone: 020 7832 7800  
Fax: 020 7832 7801  
Email: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

**Wales** (welcomes correspondence in Welsh and in English)

##### Cardiff

Ground Floor, 1 Caspian Point,  
Caspian Way,  
Cardiff Bay CF10 4DQ

Telephone: 02920 447710  
Text-phone: 02920 447713  
Fax: 02920 447712  
Email: [wales@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:wales@equalityhumanrights.com)

#### **Scotland**

##### **Glasgow**

151 West George Street,  
Glasgow G2 2JJ  
Telephone: 0141 228 5910  
Fax: 0141 228 5912  
Email: [scotland@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:scotland@equalityhumanrights.com)

#### **Directgov**

Directgov is the UK government's digital service for people in England and Wales. It delivers information and practical advice about public services, bringing them all together in one place.

Website: [www.direct.gov.uk](http://www.direct.gov.uk)

#### **Government Equalities Office (GEO)**

The GEO is the Government department responsible for equalities legislation and policy in the UK.

Website: [www.equalities.gov.uk](http://www.equalities.gov.uk)

## **Business advice and information**

#### **British Chambers of Commerce (BCC)**

The BCC is the national body for a network of accredited Chambers of Commerce across the UK; each Chamber provides representation, services, information and guidance to its members.

Website: [www.britishchambers.org.uk](http://www.britishchambers.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7654 5800

Fax: 020 7000 1373  
Email: [info@britishchambers.org.uk](mailto:info@britishchambers.org.uk)

### **British Retail Consortium (BRC)**

The BRC is a trade association representing a broad range of retailers. It provides advice and information for its members.

Website: [www.brc.org.uk](http://www.brc.org.uk)  
Telephone: 020 7854 8900  
Fax: 020 7854 8901

### **EEF**

EEF is a membership organisation which provides business services to help members manage people, processes, environment and more, so that members can meet their regulatory commitments.

Website: [www.eef.org.uk](http://www.eef.org.uk)  
Telephone: 020 7222 7777  
Fax: 020 7222 2782

### **Federation of Small Businesses (FSB)**

The FSB works to protect, promote, and further the interests of the self-employed and small business sector. It provides a range of member services.

Website: [www.fsb.org.uk](http://www.fsb.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0808 2020 888  
Fax: 01253 348 046

## **Charities and voluntary organisations**

### **Charity Commission for England and Wales**

The Charity Commission registers and regulates charities in England and Wales. It offers them advice and provides a wide range of services and guidance to help them run as effectively as possible.

Website: [www.charity-commission.gov.uk](http://www.charity-commission.gov.uk)  
Telephone: 0845 300 0218



Textphone: 0845 300 0219

#### **National Council for Voluntary Organisations (NCVO)**

The NCVO provides information, advice and support to others working in or with the voluntary sector in England.

Website: [www.ncvo-vol.org.uk](http://www.ncvo-vol.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7713 6161

#### **Office of the Scottish Charity Regulator (OSCR)**

The OSCR is the independent regulator and registrar for Scottish charities. It is a Non-Ministerial Department and forms part of the Scottish Administration.

Website: [www.oscr.org.uk](http://www.oscr.org.uk)

Telephone: 01382 220446

Fax: 01382 220314

Email: [info@oscr.org.uk](mailto:info@oscr.org.uk)

#### **Scottish Council for Voluntary Organisations (SCVO)**

The SCVO is the national body representing the voluntary sector in Scotland and provides information, advice and support to members.

Website: [www.scvo.org.uk](http://www.scvo.org.uk)

Telephone: 0131 474 8000

Email: [enquiries@scvo.org.uk](mailto:enquiries@scvo.org.uk)

#### **Voice 4 Change England**

Voice4Change England is a national policy body dedicated to strengthening the ethnic minority Third Sector. It provides a co-ordinated policy voice for ethnic minority groups and organisations and supports them to thrive.

Website: [www.voice4change-england.co.uk](http://www.voice4change-england.co.uk)

Telephone: 020 7697 4240

#### **Wales Council for Voluntary Action (WCVA)**

The WCVA is the national body representing the voluntary sector in Wales and provides information, advice and support to members.

Website: [www.wcva.org.uk](http://www.wcva.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 2888 329

SMS: 07797 805628

Email: [help@wcva.org.uk](mailto:help@wcva.org.uk)

## Advice on specific issues

### Age UK

Age UK aims to improve later life for everyone by providing information and advice, campaigns, products, training and research.

Website: [www.ageuk.org.uk](http://www.ageuk.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 169 6565

Email: [contact@ageuk.org.uk](mailto:contact@ageuk.org.uk)

### Carers Trust

The Princess Royal Trust for Carers is the largest provider of comprehensive carers' support services in the UK through its unique network of 144 independently managed Carers' Centres, 85 young carers' services and interactive websites. The Trust currently provides quality information, advice and support services to over 400,000 carers, including approximately 25,000 young carers.

Website: [www.carers.org](http://www.carers.org); [www.youngcarers.net](http://www.youngcarers.net)

Telephone: 0844 800 4361

Fax: 0844 800 4362

Email: [info@carers.org](mailto:info@carers.org)

### Carers UK

The voice of carers. Carers provide unpaid care by looking after an ill, frail or disabled family member, friend or partner.

England

Website: [www.carersuk.org](http://www.carersuk.org)

Telephone: 0808 808 7777 (Mon to Fri, from 10am until 4pm)

Email: [advice@carersuk.org](mailto:advice@carersuk.org)

### Centre for Accessible Environments (CAE):

CAE is a registered charity providing information and training on the accessibility of the built environment for disabled people.

Website: [www.cae.org.uk](http://www.cae.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7822 8232

Email: [info@cae.org.uk](mailto:info@cae.org.uk)

**ChildLine**

ChildLine is the UK's free, confidential helpline dedicated to children and young people. Advice can also be found on its website.

Website: [www.childline.org.uk](http://www.childline.org.uk)

Telephone: 0800 1111

**The Children's Legal Centre (CLC)**

The CLC provides legal advice, information and representation for children and young people.

Website: [www.childrenslegalcentre.com](http://www.childrenslegalcentre.com)

Telephone: 08088 020 008 (Mon-Fri 8am-8pm)

**Children's Rights Alliance England (CRAE)**

CRAE provides free legal information and advice, raises awareness of children's human rights, and undertakes research about children's access to their rights.

Website: [www.crae.org.uk](http://www.crae.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7278 8222

Advice line (Tues to Thurs 3.30-5.30pm): 0800 32 88 759

Email: [info@crae.org.uk](mailto:info@crae.org.uk)

Advice email: [advice@crae.org.uk](mailto:advice@crae.org.uk)

**Disability Law Service (DLS)**

The DLS is a national charity providing information and advice to disabled and Deaf people. It covers a wide range of topics including discrimination, consumer issues, education and employment.

Website: [www.dls.org.uk](http://www.dls.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7791 9800

Minicom: 020 7791 9801

**Mencap**

Mencap is the leading UK charity for people with a learning disability and their families. It provides a range of services including advice and information.

Website: [www.mencap.org.uk](http://www.mencap.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 808 1111

Fax: 020 7608 3254

Email: [information@mencap.org.uk](mailto:information@mencap.org.uk)

**Mind**

Mind is the leading mental health charity for England and Wales. It provides information to help promote understanding of mental health and campaigns to promote and protect good mental health. It has an info-line and a legal services line, and also provides online advice.

Website: [www.mind.org.uk](http://www.mind.org.uk)

Infoline: 0300 1233 393

Legal Advice Service: 0845 2259393

Email: [legal@mind.org.uk](mailto:legal@mind.org.uk)

**Disability Rights UK**

RADAR is a national umbrella organisation with around 500 member groups. It campaigns for equal rights for disabled people and gives information and advice on disability issues.

Website: [www.disabilityrightsuk.org](http://www.disabilityrightsuk.org)

Telephone: 020 7250 3222

Fax: 020 7247 8765

Email: [enquiries@disabilityrightsuk.org](mailto:enquiries@disabilityrightsuk.org)

**Rethink**

Rethink helps over 48,000 people every year through its services, support groups and by providing information on mental health conditions.

Website: [www.rethink.org](http://www.rethink.org)

Telephone: 0300 5000 927

(10:00 to 13:00 Monday–Friday)

Email: [advice@rethink.org](mailto:advice@rethink.org)

**Royal National Institute for the Blind (RNIB)**

The RNIB is the UK's leading charity offering information, support and advice to over two million people with sight loss.

Website: [www.rnib.org.uk](http://www.rnib.org.uk)

Helpline: 0303 123 9999

Email: [helpline@rnib.org.uk](mailto:helpline@rnib.org.uk)

**Action on hearing loss**

Action on hearing loss (previously RNID) offers a range of services for Deaf and hard of hearing people and provides information and support on all aspects of deafness, hearing loss and tinnitus.

Website: [www.actiononhearingloss.org.uk](http://www.actiononhearingloss.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 808 0123  
Textphone: 0808 808 9000  
Email: [informationline@hearingloss.org.uk](mailto:informationline@hearingloss.org.uk)  
[tinnitushelpline@hearingloss.org.uk](mailto:tinnitushelpline@hearingloss.org.uk)

### **SCOPE**

Scope is the leading UK disability charity for children and adults with cerebral palsy. It provides information, help, support and advice on disability issues.

Website: [www.scope.org.uk](http://www.scope.org.uk)  
Helpline: 0808 800 3333 (9am and 5pm on weekdays)  
Email: [response@scope.org.uk](mailto:response@scope.org.uk)

### **Terrence Higgins Trust**

Terrence Higgins Trust is the leading and largest HIV and sexual health charity in the UK. It offers a range of services including advice and information for people affected by HIV.

Website: [www.tht.org.uk](http://www.tht.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0808 802 1221 (Mon to Fri, 9.30am to 5.30pm)  
Fax: 020 7812 1601  
Email: [info@tht.org.uk](mailto:info@tht.org.uk)

### **Gingerbread**

Gingerbread is a national and local charity working for, and with, single parent families, to improve their lives. It lobbies and campaigns to raise awareness and provides advice and information for single parents.

Website: [www.gingerbread.org.uk](http://www.gingerbread.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0808 802 0925 (single parent helpline)  
Email: [info@gingerbread.org.uk](mailto:info@gingerbread.org.uk)

### **Maternity Action**

Maternity Action works to end inequality and promote the health and wellbeing of all pregnant women, their partners and children from before conception through to the child's early years. It provides information sheets but cannot provide advice on individual cases.

Website: [www.maternityaction.org.uk](http://www.maternityaction.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0845 600 8533

### **Rights of Women (RoW)**

RoW is a UK voluntary organisation working to attain justice and equality by informing, educating and empowering women on their legal rights. It provides free, confidential advice on a range of issues.

Website: <http://www.rightsofwomen.org.uk>

Telephone:

Textphone: 020 7490 2562

### **Women's Aid**

Women's Aid is the key national charity working to end domestic violence against women and children. It supports a network of over 500 domestic and sexual violence services across the UK and provides a free 24-hour helpline.

Website: [www.womensaid.org.uk](http://www.womensaid.org.uk)

Telephone: 0808 2000 247

Email: [info@womensaid.org.uk](mailto:info@womensaid.org.uk)

Helpline: [helpline@womensaid.org.uk](mailto:helpline@womensaid.org.uk)

### **Inter Faith Network**

The Inter Faith Network for the UK promotes good relations between people of different faiths. It has a list of contact details for faith groups and organisations across the UK.

Website: [www.interfaith.org.uk](http://www.interfaith.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7730 0410

### **Gender Identity Research and Education Society (GIRES)**

GIRES provides a wide range of information and training for Trans people, their families and professionals who care for them.

Website: [www.gires.org.uk](http://www.gires.org.uk)

Telephone: 01372 801 554

Fax: 01372 272 297

Email: [info@gires.org.uk](mailto:info@gires.org.uk)

### **The Gender Trust**

The Gender Trust is the UK's largest charity working to support transsexual, gender dysphoric and transgender people or those who are affected by gender identity issues. It has a helpline and provides training and information for employers and organisations.

Website: [www.gendertrust.org.uk](http://www.gendertrust.org.uk)

Telephone: 01527 894 838

Email: [info@gendertrust.org.uk](mailto:info@gendertrust.org.uk)

### **Press for Change (PfC)**

PfC is a political lobbying and educational organisation. It campaigns to achieve equality and human rights for all Trans people in the UK through legislation and social change. It provides legal advice, training and consultancy for employers and organisations as well as undertaking commissioned research.

Website: [www.pfc.org.uk](http://www.pfc.org.uk)

Telephone: 08448 708165 Email: [office@pfc.org.uk](mailto:office@pfc.org.uk)

### **The Albert Kennedy Trust**

The Albert Kennedy Trust provides information and support to lesbian, gay, bisexual and trans homeless young people.

Website: [www.akt.org.uk](http://www.akt.org.uk)

Telephone: 020 7831 6562 (London)

Telephone: 0161 228 3308 (Manchester)

Telephone: 0191 281 0099 (Newcastle-upon-Tyne)

Email: [contact@akt.org.uk](mailto:contact@akt.org.uk)

### **Equality Network**

The Equality Network works for lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender equality and human rights in Scotland. It provides information, and carries out campaigning and policy work.

Website: [www.equality-network.org](http://www.equality-network.org)

Telephone: 0131 467 6039

Fax: 0131 476 9006

Email: [en@equality-network.org](mailto:en@equality-network.org)

### **Galop**

Galop works to prevent and challenge homophobic and transphobic hate crime in Greater London. It aims to reduce crimes against lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender people, and campaigns for an improved criminal justice system.

Website: [www.galop.org.uk](http://www.galop.org.uk)

Helpline: 020 7704 2040

Fax: 020 7704 6707

Email: [info@galop.org.uk](mailto:info@galop.org.uk)

### **The Lesbian and Gay Foundation (LGF)**

The LGF is a North-West based charity working to support lesbian, gay and bisexual people. It provides advice and information, counselling, and support groups.

Website: [www.lgf.org.uk](http://www.lgf.org.uk)  
Telephone: 0845 3 30 30 30  
Fax: 0161 235 8036  
Email: [info@lgf.org.uk](mailto:info@lgf.org.uk)

### **Stonewall**

Stonewall is the UK's leading lesbian, gay and bisexual charity and carries out campaigning, lobbying and research work as well as providing a free information service for individuals, organisations and employers.

Website: [www.stonewall.org.uk](http://www.stonewall.org.uk)  
Telephone: 08000 50 20 20  
Email: [info@stonewall.org.uk](mailto:info@stonewall.org.uk)



## 7. Glossary

<b>accessible venue</b>	A building designed and/or altered to ensure that people, including disabled people, can enter and move round freely and access its events and facilities.
<b>Act</b>	A law or piece of legislation passed by both Houses of Parliament and agreed to by the Crown, which then becomes part of statutory law (ie is <i>enacted</i> ).
<b>age</b>	This refers to a person belonging to a particular age group, which can mean people of the same age (e.g. 32-year-olds) or range of ages (e.g. 18–30-year-olds, or people over 50).
<b>agent</b>	A person who has authority to act on behalf of another ('the principal') but who is not an <b>employee</b> or <b>worker</b> employed by the employer.
<b>alternative format</b>	Media formats which are accessible to disabled people with specific impairments, for example Braille, audio description, subtitles and Easy Read.
<b>anticipatory duty</b>	For service providers, the duty to make reasonable adjustments is anticipatory; within reason, it is owed to all potential disabled customers and not just to those who are known to the service provider.
<b>associate members</b>	A person who has access to some or all of an association's benefits, facilities and services because they are a member of another associated private club.
<b>associated with</b>	This is used in a situation where the reason a service user is discriminated against is not because they have a particular protected characteristic, but because they are 'associated with' another person who has that protected characteristic; for example, the other person is their friend or relative. For example, a golf club bars a person from membership because they have a disabled child. This is sometimes referred to as discrimination 'by association'.
<b>association</b>	An association of people which has at least 25 members, where admission to membership is regulated and involves a process of selection.

<b>auxiliary aid</b>	Usually a special piece of equipment to improve accessibility.
<b>auxiliary service</b>	A service to improve access to something often involving the provision of a helper/assistant.
<b>barriers</b>	In this guide, this term refers to obstacles which get in the way of equality for disabled people and other people put at a disadvantage because of their protected characteristics. Unless explicitly stated, 'barriers' does not exclusively mean physical barriers. For the wider context in relation to disabled people, see <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b> .
<b>breastfeeding</b>	When a woman feeds her baby with breast milk. Breastfeeding is specifically protected for the first 26 weeks after birth by the pregnancy and maternity discrimination provisions in the Equality Act in relation to non-work cases.
<b>burden of proof</b>	This refers to where the onus of proving discrimination lies. Broadly speaking, a service user must prove facts which, if unexplained, indicate discrimination. The burden of proof then shifts to the service provider to prove there was no discrimination. If the service provider cannot then prove that no discrimination was involved, the service user will win their case.
<b>by association</b>	See <b>associated with</b> .
<b>charity</b>	A body (whether corporate or not) which is for a statutory charitable purpose that provides a benefit to the public.
<b>Code of Practice</b>	A statutory guidance document which must be taken into account by the Courts when applying the law and which may assist people to comply with the law.
<b>comparator</b>	A person with whom a claimant compares themselves to establish less favourable treatment or a disadvantage in a discrimination case. If a comparator does not exist it is often possible to rely on how a person would have been treated if they did not have the relevant protected characteristic (known as a 'hypothetical' comparator).
<b>data protection</b>	Safeguards concerning personal data provided for by statute, mainly the Data Protection Act 1998.
<b>direct discrimination</b>	Less favourable treatment of a person compared with another person because of a protected characteristic. This may be their own protected characteristic, or a protected characteristic

of someone else; for example, someone with whom they are **associated**. It is also direct discrimination to treat someone less favourably because the service provider wrongly perceives them to have a protected characteristic.

**disability**

A person has a disability if they have a physical or mental impairment which has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on that person's ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities. Sometimes people are treated as having a disability where they do not meet these criteria (e.g. people with asymptomatic cancer or HIV).

**disabled person**

Someone who has a physical or mental impairment that has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on their ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities. Sometimes people are treated as having a disability where they do not meet these criteria (e.g. people with asymptomatic cancer or HIV).

**discrimination arising from disability**

When a person is treated unfavourably because of something arising in consequence of their disability; for example, a restaurant does not allow a visually impaired customer to come in because they want to bring their dog inside. The dog is a guide dog and the reason the customer has the dog is because of their disability. If it is **objectively justifiable** to treat a person unfavourably because of something arising from their disability, then the treatment will not be unlawful. It is unlikely to be justifiable if the service user has not first made any **reasonable adjustments**.

**Disproportionately low**

Refers to situations where people with a protected characteristic are under-represented (e.g. among service users) compared to their numbers in the population.

**diversity**

This tends to be used to refer to a group of people with many different types of protected characteristic, eg people of all ages, religions, ethnic background etc.

**duty to make reasonable adjustments**

This duty arises where (1) a physical feature or (2) a provision, criterion or practice applied by a service provider puts a service user at a **substantial** disadvantage in comparison with people who are not disabled. It also applies where a service user would be put at a substantial disadvantage but for the provision of an auxiliary aid. The service provider has a duty to take reasonable steps to avoid that disadvantage by (i) changing provisions, criteria or practices, (ii) altering, removing or providing a reasonable alternative means of avoiding

physical features, and (iii) providing auxiliary aids. In many situations, a service provider must treat the disabled service user more favourably than others as part of the reasonable adjustment. More detail of the law and examples of reasonable adjustments are set out in Chapter 4 of this guide.

**employee** A person who carries out work for a person under a contract of employment or a contract of apprenticeship or a contract personally to do work; or a person who carries out work for the Crown or a relevant member of the Houses of Parliament staff. This guide refers to someone in these categories as 'workers'. See **worker**.

**employer** A person who makes work available under a contract of employment, a contract of service or a contract of apprenticeship, or the Crown or a relevant member of the Houses of Parliament staff.

**equality policy** A statement of an organisation's commitment to the principle of equality of opportunity in the workplace.

**equality training** Training on equality law and effective equality practice.

**exceptions** Where, in specified circumstances, a provision of the Act does not apply.

**gender reassignment** The process of changing or transitioning from one [sexgender](#) to another. See also **transsexual person**.

**gender recognition certificate** A certificate issued under the Gender Recognition Act to a transsexual person who seeks such a certificate and has, or has had, gender dysphoria, has lived in the acquired gender throughout the preceding two years, and intends to continue to live in the acquired gender until death.

**goods, facilities or services**

Goods refer to moveable property; facilities to opportunities to enjoy a benefit or do something; and services can refer to the wide range of provisions that people might need, for example hotels, restaurants and pubs, post offices and banks, shops and market stalls, cinemas, parks, petrol stations, hospitals, telesales and services provided by bus and train operators. Goods, facilities and services must be available to the public or any part of it if they are to fall within the Equality Act.

**guests** People invited to enjoy an association's benefits, facilities or services by that association or a member

Commented [1]: Given the current consultation on reform I wonder if we could cut this and just leave it to end at "certificate", as otherwise we'd have to update it again soon?

of it.

<b>harass</b>	To behave towards someone in a way that violates their dignity, or creates a degrading, humiliating, hostile, intimidating or offensive environment.
<b>harassment</b>	Unwanted behaviour that has the purpose or effect of violating a person's dignity or creates a degrading, humiliating, hostile, intimidating or offensive environment. <i>See also</i> <b>sexual harassment</b> .
<b>impairment</b>	A functional limitation which may lead to a person being defined as disabled according to the definition under the Act. <i>See also</i> <b>disability</b> .
<b>indirect discrimination</b>	Where a service provider applies (or would apply) an apparently neutral practice, provision or criterion which puts people with a particular protected characteristic at a disadvantage compared with others who do not share that characteristic, and applying the practice, provision or criterion cannot be objectively justified by the service provider.
<b>indirectly discriminatory</b>	<i>See</i> <b>indirect discrimination</b> .
<b>Information Society Service Provider (ISSP)</b>	A service provider which provides electronic data storage, usually for payment, for example, selling goods online.
<b>instruction to discriminate</b>	When someone who is in a position to do so instructs another to discriminate against a third party. For example, if a GP instructed their receptionist not to register anyone who might need help from an interpreter, this would amount to an instruction to discriminate.
<b>insurance business</b>	An organisation which provides financial protection against specified risks to clients in exchange for payment.
<b>judicial review</b>	A procedure by which the High Court supervises the exercise of public authority power to ensure that it remains within the bounds of what is lawful.
<b>knowledge</b>	This refers to knowledge of a person's disability which, in some circumstances, is needed for discrimination to occur. The required knowledge is of the facts of the person's disability but a service provider does not also need to realise that those

particular facts are likely to meet the legal definition of disability.

**liability**

Legal responsibility. An employer is legally responsible for discrimination carried out by workers employed by them or by their agents, unless they have taken all reasonable preventative steps.

**marriage and civil partnership**

In England and Wales marriage is no longer restricted to a union between a man and a woman but now includes a marriage between two people of the same sex.<sup>1</sup> This will also be true in Scotland when the relevant legislation is brought into force.<sup>2</sup> Same-sex couples can also have their relationships legally recognised as 'civil partnerships'. Civil partners must not be treated less favourably than married couples (except where permitted by the Equality Act).

**maternity**

See **pregnancy and maternity**.

**members**

People who have been formally accepted into membership of an association.

**minister**

Someone who is authorised to perform religious functions, such as weddings.

**monitor**

See **monitoring**.

**monitoring**

Monitoring for equality data to check if people with protected characteristics are participating, using services and being treated equally. For example, monitoring the representation of women, or disabled people, amongst service users or at senior levels within organisations.

**monitoring form**

A form which organisations use to collect equality monitoring data – from, for example, job applicants or service users. It records information about a person's protected characteristics. It is kept separately from any identifying information about the person.

**more favourably**

To treat somebody better than someone else. This is unlawful under the Act if it is because of a protected characteristic except in very limited circumstances. The law requires service providers to make reasonable adjustments for a disabled person to remove any disadvantage caused by their disability,

---

<sup>1</sup> Section 1, Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013.

<sup>2</sup> Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014

and this often *requires* treating them more favourably. A service provider can also *choose* to treat a disabled service user more favourably in other ways, even if they are not at a particular disadvantage on the relevant occasion.

<b>national security</b>	The security of the nation and its protection from external and internal threats, particularly from activities such as terrorism and threats from other nations.
<b>objective justification</b>	When something can be shown to be a proportionate means of achieving a legitimate aim – that is, the way of achieving the aim is appropriate and necessary. See also <b>proportionate</b> .
<b>office-holders</b>	There are personal and public offices. A personal office is a remunerated office or post to which a person is appointed personally under the direction of someone else. A public office is appointed by a member of the government, or the appointment is recommended by them, or the appointment can be made on the recommendation or with the approval of both Houses of Parliament, the Scottish Parliament or the National Assembly for Wales.
<b>palantypist</b>	Also known as 'Speech to Text Reporter'. A palantypist reproduces speech into a text format onto a computer screen at verbatim speeds for Deaf or hard of hearing people to read.
<b>past disability</b>	A person who has had a disability as defined by the Equality Act.
<b>perception</b>	This refers to a belief that someone has a protected characteristic, whether or not they do have it. The idea of discrimination because of perception is not explicitly referred to in the Equality Act, but it is incorporated because of the way the definition of <b>direct discrimination</b> is worded.
<b>physical barriers</b>	A physical feature of a building or premises which places disabled people at a substantial disadvantage compared to non-disabled people when accessing goods, facilities and services. See <i>also</i> physical features.
<b>physical features</b>	Anything that forms part of the design or construction of a place of work, including any fixtures, such as doors, stairs etc.
<b>positive action</b>	If a service provider reasonably thinks that people sharing a certain protected characteristic suffer a disadvantage connected to that characteristic or have different needs, or if their participation in an activity is disproportionately low, a

service provider can take any action (which would otherwise be discrimination against other people) which is a proportionate means of enabling or encouraging those people to overcome or minimise their disadvantage or to participate in activities or meeting their needs.

**positive discrimination**

Treating someone with a protected characteristic more favourably to counteract the effects of past discrimination. It is generally not lawful, although more favourable treatment of service users because of their disability is permitted if the service provider so wishes. Moreover, the duty to make reasonable adjustments may require a service provider to treat a service user more favourably if that is needed to avoid a disadvantage.

**pregnancy and maternity**

Pregnancy is the condition of being pregnant or expecting a baby. In the non-work context, protection against maternity discrimination is for 26 weeks after giving birth, and this includes treating a woman unfavourably because she is breastfeeding.

**principal**

In the context used in this Guide, where a service provider uses an agent, the service provider is the **principal**.

**private disposals**

When an owner-occupier disposes of property (i.e. sells or leases etc.) without using an estate agent or publishing an advert in connection with the 'disposal'.

**procurement**

The term used in relation to the range of goods and services a public body or authority requires and delivers. It includes sourcing and appointment of a service provider and the subsequent management of the goods and services being provided.

**professional organisations**

A body of persons engaged in the same profession, formed usually to provide advice, maintain standards, and represent the profession in discussions with other bodies about professional concerns.

**proportionate**

This refers to measures or actions that are appropriate and necessary. Whether something is proportionate in the circumstances will be a question of fact and will involve weighing up the discriminatory impact of the action against the reasons for it, and asking if there is any other way of achieving the aim of the action.



<b>protected characteristics</b>	These are the grounds upon which discrimination is unlawful. The characteristics are: age, disability, gender reassignment, marriage and civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity, race, religion or belief, sex and sexual orientation.
<b>provision, criterion or practice</b>	Identifying a provision, criterion or practice is key to establishing <b>indirect discrimination</b> . It can include, for example, any formal or informal policies, decisions, rules, practices, arrangements, criteria, conditions, prerequisites or qualifications.
<b>public authority</b>	For the purposes of this Guidance a 'public authority' means government departments, local authorities, courts and tribunals, health authorities and hospitals, schools, prisons, and police.
<b>public bodies</b>	For the purpose of this Guidance public bodies includes public authorities (as above) as well as organisations which have a role in the processes of national governments but are not a government department or part of one. They operate to a greater or lesser extent at arm's length from Ministers. For example, quangos, a non-departmental government body or an inspectorate. This is not an exhaustive list.
<b>public functions</b>	A 'public function' for the purposes of this Guidance is any act or activities of a public nature carried out by a public authority or public body or by the private or voluntary sectors which is not already covered by the other sections of the Act dealing with services, housing, education and employment. Specifically, in relation to the private and voluntary sectors, it will cover certain acts or activities carried out on behalf of the state. Examples of public functions include: determining frameworks for entitlement to benefits or services; law enforcement; receiving someone into prison or immigration detention facility; planning control; licensing; parking controls; trading standards; environmental health; regulatory functions; investigation of complaints; child protection. This is not an exhaustive list.
<b>public sector equality duty</b>	The duty on a public authority when carrying out its functions to have due regard to the need to eliminate unlawful discrimination and harassment, foster good relations and advance equality of opportunity.
<b>qualifications bodies</b>	An authority or body which can confer qualifications.

<b>questionnaire</b>	See <b>questions procedure</b> .
<b>questions procedure</b>	A procedure under the Equality Act whereby written pre-action questions are issued to the defendant, i.e. the person or organisation against whom a discrimination claim may be made. The questions are usually put onto a standard written form which is often called a 'questionnaire'. This procedure will be abolished shortly (see, section in the Guidance on 'questions procedure' for details).
<b>race</b>	Refers to the protected characteristic of race. It refers to a group of people defined by their race, colour, nationality (including citizenship), ethnic or national origins.
<b>reasonable adjustment</b>	See the <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b>
<b>reasonable steps</b>	See the <b>duty to make reasonable adjustments</b> .
<b>regulations</b>	Secondary legislation made under an Act of Parliament (or European legislation) setting out subsidiary matters which assist in the Act's implementation.
<b>religion or belief</b>	Religion has the meaning usually given to it but belief includes religious and philosophical beliefs including lack of belief (e.g. atheism). Generally, a belief should affect your life choices or the way you live for it to be included in the definition.
<b>religion or belief organisations</b>	An organisation founded on an ethos based on a religion or belief. Faith schools are one example of a religion or belief organisation. <i>See also religion or belief.</i>
<b>religious organisation</b>	See <b>religion or belief organisations</b> .
<b>separate services</b>	Services only provided for one sex.
<b>service complaint</b>	In the context of provision of services, this is a complaint about service delivery.
<b>service provider</b>	Someone (including an organisation) who provides services, goods or facilities to the general public or a section of it. <i>See also goods, facilities and services.</i>
<b>service users</b>	Those accessing or using a particular service. <i>See also goods, facilities and services.</i>
<b>services</b>	See <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .
<b>services, goods or</b>	See <b>goods, facilities and services</b> .

## **facilities**

### **sex**

This is a protected characteristic. It refers to whether a person is a man or a woman (of any age).

### **sexual harassment**

Any conduct of a sexual nature that is unwanted by the recipient, including verbal, non-verbal and physical behaviours, and which violates the victim's dignity or creates an intimidating, hostile, degrading or offensive environment for them.

### **single-sex facilities**

Facilities which are only available to men or to women, the provision of which may be lawful under the Equality Act.

### **single-sex services**

A service provided only to men or women in certain circumstances. It is not always discriminatory to provide single-sex services, for example provision of single-sex changing facilities in a leisure centre.

### **small premises**

Premises are small if they are not normally sufficient to accommodate more than two other households (and no more than six people in addition to the owner-occupier and/or their relatives and/or close relations).

### **Specific equality duties**

These are duties imposed on certain public authorities. They are designed to ensure that the better performance by a public authority of the public sector equality duty. The specific duties are different in England, Scotland and Wales. (*See also public sector equality duty*).

### **stakeholders**

People with an interest in a subject or issue who are likely to be affected by any decision relating to it and/or have responsibilities relating to it.

### **substantial**

This word tends to come up most in connection with the definition of disability and the duty to make reasonable adjustments for disabled workers. The Equality Act says only that 'substantial' means more than minor or trivial.

### **terms of employment**

The provisions of a person's contract of employment, whether provided for expressly in the contract itself or incorporated by statute, custom and practice or common law etc.

### **textphone**

A type of telephone for Deaf or hard of hearing people which is attached to a keyboard and a screen on which the messages

sent and received are displayed.

**transsexual person**

A person who has the protected characteristic of gender reassignment. This may be a woman who has transitioned or is transitioning to be a man, or a man who has transitioned or is transitioning to be a woman. The law does not require a person to undergo a medical procedure to be recognised as a transsexual person. ~~Once a transsexual person has acquired a gender recognition certificate, it is probably the case that they should be treated entirely as in their acquired gender.~~

**sexual orientation**

Whether a person's sexual attraction is towards their own sex, the opposite sex or to both sexes.

**UK Text Relay Service**

Text Relay is a national telephone relay service for Deaf, deafened, hard of hearing, deafblind and speech-impaired people. It lets them use a textphone to access any services that are available on standard telephone systems.

**unfavourably**

The term is used (instead of less favourable) where a comparator is not required to show that someone has been subjected to a detriment or disadvantage because of a protected characteristic – for example in relation to pregnancy and maternity discrimination, or **discrimination arising from disability**.

**victimisation**

Subjecting a person to a detriment because they have done a protected act or there is a belief that they have done a protected act i.e. bringing proceedings under the Equality Act; giving evidence or information in connection with proceedings under the Act; doing any other thing for the purposes or in connection with the Act; making an allegation that a person has contravened the Act; or making a relevant pay disclosure.

**victimise**

The act of victimisation

**vocational service**

A range of services to enable people to retain and gain paid employment and mainstream education.

**worker**

In this guide, 'worker' is used to refer to any person working for an employer, whether they are employed on a contract of employment (ie an '**employee**') or on a contract personally to do work, or more generally as a **contract worker**.

# Contacts

This publication and related equality and human rights resources are available from the Commission's website: [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com)

For advice, information or guidance on equality, discrimination or human rights issues, please contact the Equality Advisory and Support Service, a free and independent service.

Website [www.equalityadvisoryservice.com](http://www.equalityadvisoryservice.com)

Telephone 0808 800 0082

Textphone 0808 800 0084

Hours 09:00 to 20:00 (Monday to Friday)  
10:00 to 14:00 (Saturday)

Post FREEPOST Equality Advisory Support Service FPN4431

Questions and comments regarding this publication may be addressed to: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com). The Commission welcomes your feedback

## Alternative formats

This guide is available as a PDF file and as a Microsoft Word file from [www.equalityhumanrights.com](http://www.equalityhumanrights.com). For information on accessing a Commission publication in an alternative format, please contact: [correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com](mailto:correspondence@equalityhumanrights.com)

© 2014 Equality and Human Rights Commission

First published January 2011. Last updated [September 2018](#)~~April 2014~~

ISBN 978-1-84206-571-6